



ZEND-AVESTA
THE SACRED BOOK OF THE EAST

THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

THE ZEND-AVESTA

PART I

THE VENDIDAD

TRANSLATED BY

JAMES DARMESTETER

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I.THE DISCOVERY OF THE ZEND-AVESTA .8
CHAPTER II.THE INTERPRETATION OF THE ZEND-AVESTA .14
CHAPTER III.THE FORMATION OF THE ZEND-AVESTA .16
CHAPTER IV.THE ORIGIN OF THE AVESTA RELIGION .26
CHAPTER V.THE VENDIDAD .37

TRANSLATION OF THE VENDIDAD

FARGARD I.AN ENUMERATION OF SIXTEEN LANDS CREATED BY AHURA MAZDA, AND OF AS MANY PLAGUES CREATED IN OPPOSITION BY ANGRA MAINYU .46
FARGARD II.MYTHS OF YIMA .49
FARGARD III.THE EARTH .53
I (1-6).The five places where the Earth feels most joy .53
II (7-11).The five places where the Earth feels most sorrow .53
III (12-35).The five things which most rejoice the Earth .54
IV (36-42).Corpses ought not to be buried in the Earth .56
FARGARD IV.CONTRACTS AND OUTRAGES .57
I (1) .57
II a (2).Classification of contracts .57
II b (3-4).Damages for breach of contract .58

- II c (5-10).Kinsmen responsible .58
- II d (11-16).Penalties for breach of contract .58
- III (17-55).Outrages .59
- III (18) .59
- III (18-21) .59
- III (22-25) .59
- III (26-29) .60
- III (30-33) .60
- III (34-36) .60
- III (37-39) .61
- III (40-43) .61
- III (44-45) .61
- III (46-49) .62
- III (47-49) .62

FARGARD V .63

- I (1-7).If a man defile the fire or the earth involuntarily, er unconsciously, it is no sin .63
- II (8-9).Water and fire do not kill .64
- III (10-14).Disposal of the dead during winter .64
- IV (15-20).How the Dakhmas are cleansed by water from the heavens .65
- V (21-26).On the excellence of purity and of the law that shows how to recover it, when lost .65
- VI (27-38).On the defiling power of the Nasu being greater or less, according to the greater or less dignity of the being that dies .66
- VI I (39-44).On the management of sacrificial implements defiled by the dead .67
- VIII (45-62).On the treatment of a woman who has been delivered of a still-born child; and what is to be done with her clothes .67

FARGARD VI .69

- I (1-9).How long the earth remains unclean, when defiled by the dead .69
- II (10-25).Penalties for defiling the ground with dead matter .70
- III (26-41).Purification of the different sorts of water, when defiled by the dead .71

IV (42-43).Purification of the Haoma .72

V (44-51).The place for corpses; the Dakhmas .72

FARGARD VII .73

I (1-5).How long after death the Nasu falls upon the dead .73

II (6-9).How far the defiling power of the Nasu extends .74

III (10-22).Cleansing of clothes defiled by the dead .74

IV (23-24).Eating of corpses an abomination .75

V (25-27).Bringing corpses to fire or water an abomination .76

VI (28-35).Cleansing of wood and com defiled by the dead .76

VII a (36-40).Physicians; their probation .77

VII b (41-44).Their fees .77

VIII (45-49).Purification of the earth, of the Dakhmas. The Dakhmas and the Daevas .77

IX (60-72).Treatment of a woman who has brought forth a still-born child .79

X (73-75).Cleansing of vessels defiled by the dead .79

XI (76).Cleansing of the cow .80

XII (77).Unclean libations .80

FARGARD VIII .80

I (1-3).Purification of the house where a man has died .81

II (4-13).Funerals .81

III (14-22).Purification of the ways along which the corpse has been carried .82

IV (23-25).No clothes to be wasted on a corpse .83

V (26--32).Unlawful lusts .83

VI (33-34).A corpse when dried up does not contaminate .84

VII (35-72).Purification of the man defiled by the dead .84

VIII (73-80).Purification of the fire defiled by the dead .87

IX (81--96).The Bahram fire .88

X (97-107).Purification in the wilderness .89

FARGARD IX.THE NINE NIGHTS' BARASHNUM .90

I a (1-11).Description of the place for cleansing the un-clean (the Barashnum-gah) .90	
I b (12-36).Description of the cleansing .91	
II (37-44).Fees of the cleanser .94	
III (47-57).The false cleanser; his punishment .95	
FARGARD X.SPILLS RECITED DURING THE PROCESS OF THE CLEANSING .95	
FARGARD XI.SPECIAL SPELLS FOR THE CLEANSING OF THE SEVERAL OBJECTS .98	
FARGARD XII.THE UPAMAN: HOW LONG IT LASTS FOR DIFFERENT RELATIVE .100	
FARGARD XIII.THE DOG .103	
I (1-7).The dog of Onnazd and the dog of Ahriman .104	
I a (1-4).The dog Vanghapara (the hedge-hog) .104	
I b (5-7).The dog Zairimyangura (the tortoise) .105	
II (8-16).Offences against the dog .105	
III (17-19).On the several duties of the dog .106	
IV (20-28).On the food due to the dog .106	
V (29-38).On the mad dog; how he is to be kept, and cured .107	
VI (39-40).On the excellence of the dog .107	
VII (41-43).On the wolf-dog .108	
VIII (44-48).On the virtues and vices of the dog .108	
IX (49-50).Praise of the dog .109	
X (50-54).The water dog .109	
FARGARD XIV.THE ATONEMENT FOR THE MURDER OF A WATER DOG .109	
FARGARD XV .111	
I (1-8).On five sins the commission of which makes the sinner a Peshotanu .111	
II (9-19).On unlawful unions and attempts to procure abortion .112	
III (20-45).On the treatment of a bitch big with young .113	
IV (46-51).On the breeding of dogs .115	
FARGARD XVI .115	
I (1-11).On the uncleanness of women during their sickness .115	
II (11-12).How it can be removed .116	

III (13-18).Sundry laws relating to the same matter .116	
FARGARD XVII. HAIR AND NAILS .117	
FARGARD XVIII .118	
I (1-13).On the unworthy priest and enticers to heresy .118	
II (14-29).The holiness of the cock .120	
III (30-60).The four paramours of the Drug .121	
IV (61-71).On unlawful lusts .123	
FARGARD XIX .124	
I (1-10).Angra Mainyu attempts first to kill, then to seduce Zarathustra .125	
II (11-42).Ahura Mazda reveals the law to Zarathustra .126	
III (43-47).Angra Mainyu flees down to hell .128	
FARGARD XX. THRITA AND THE ORIGIN OF MEDICINE .129	
FARGARD XXI. WATERS AND LIGHT .130	
I (1).Praise of the holy bull .131	
II (2-3).Invocation addressed to hail as a healing power .131	
III a (4-7).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the sun .131	
III b (8-11).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the moon .131	
III c (12-17).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the stars .132	
IV (18-21).Spells against disease .132	
FARGARD XXII. ANGRA MAINYU CREATES 99,999 DISEASES: AHURA MAZDA APPLIES FOR HEALING TO THE HOLY WORD AND TO AIRYAMAN .132	
Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Translations of the Sacred Books of the East	

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I

THE DISCOVERY OF THE ZEND-AVESTA

The Zend-Avesta is the sacred book of the Parsis, that is to say, of the few remaining followers of that religion that reigned over Persia at the time when the second successor of Mohammed overthrew the Sassanian dynasty, and which has been called Dualism, or Mazdeism, or Magism, or Zoroastrianism, or Fire-worship, according as its main tenet, or its supreme God, or its priests, or its supposed founder, or its apparent object of worship has been most kept in view. In less than a century after their defeat, nearly all the conquered people were brought over to the faith of their new rulers, either by force, or policy, or the attractive power of a simpler form of creed. But many of those who clung to the faith of their fathers went and sought abroad for a new home, where they might freely worship their old gods, say their old prayers, and perform their old rites. That home they found, at last among the tolerant Hindus, on the western coast of India and in the peninsula of Guzerat. There they thrived and there they live still, while the ranks of their co-religionists in Persia are daily thinning and dwindling. As the Parsis are the ruins of a people, so are their Sacred books the ruins of a religion. There has been no other great belief in the world that ever left such poor and meager monuments of its past splendor. Yet great is the value which that small book, the Avesta, and the belief of that scanty people, the Parsis, have in the eyes of the historian and theologian, as they present to us the last reflex of the ideas which prevailed in Iran during the five centuries which preceded and the seven which followed the birth of Christ, a period which gave to the world the Gospels, the Talmud, and the Qur'an. Persia, it is known, had much influence on each of the movements which produced, or proceeded from, those three books; she lent much to the first heresiarchs, much to the Rabbis, much to Mohammed. With help of the Parsi religion and the Avesta, we are enabled to go back to the very heart of that most momentous period in the history of religious thought, which saw the blending of the Aryan mind with the Semitic, and thus opened the second stage of Aryan thought. Inquiries into the religion of ancient Persia began long ago, and it was the old foe of Persia, the Greek, who first studied it. Aristotle, Hermippus, and many others wrote of it in books of which, unfortunately, nothing more than a few fragments or merely the titles have come down to us. We find much valuable information about it, scattered in the accounts of historians and travelers, extending over ten centuries, from Herodotus down to Agathias and Procopius. It was never more eagerly studied than in the first centuries of the Christian era, but that study had no longer anything of the disinterested and almost scientific character it had in earlier times. Religious and philosophic sects, in search of new dogmas, eagerly received whatever came to them bearing the name of Zoroaster. As Xanthus the Lydian,

who is said to have lived before Herodotus, had mentioned Zoroastrian Λόγια, there came to light, in those later times, scores of oracles, styled Λόγια τού Ζωροάστρου Oracula Chaldaica sive Magica, the work of Neo-Platonists who were but very remote disciples of the Median sage. As his name had become the very emblem of wisdom, they would cover with it the latest inventions of their ever-deepening theosophy. Zoroaster and Plato were treated as if they had been philosophers of the same school, and Heracles expounded their doctrines in the same book. Proclus collected seventy Tetrads of Zoroaster and wrote commentaries on them, but we need hardly say that Zoroaster commented on by Proclus was nothing more or less than Proclus commented on by Proclus. Prodicus the Gnostic had secret books of Zoroaster; and upon the whole, it may be said that in the first centuries of Christianity, the religion of Persia was more studied and less understood than it had ever been before. The real object aimed at, in studying the old religion, was to form a new one. Throughout the Middle Ages nothing was known of Mazdeism but the name of its founder, who from a Magus was converted into a magician and master of the hidden sciences. It was not until the Renaissance that real inquiry was resumed. The first step was to collect all the information that could be gathered from Greek and Roman writers. That task was undertaken and successfully completed by Barnabe Brisson. A nearer approach to the original source was made in the following century by Italian, English, and French travelers in Asia. Pietro Della Valle, Henry Lord, Mandelslo, Ovington, Chardin, Gabriel du Chinon, and Tavernier found Zoroaster's last followers in Persia and India and made known their existence, their manners, and the main features of their belief to Europe. Gabriel du Chinon saw their books and recognized that they were not all written in the same language, their original holy writ being no longer understood except by means of translations and commentaries in another tongue. In the year 1700, a professor at Oxford, Thomas Hyde, the greatest Orientalist of his time in Europe, made the first systematic attempt to restore the history of the old Persian religion by combining the accounts of the Mohammedan writers with 'the true and genuine monuments of ancient Persia.' Unfortunately, the so-called genuine monuments of ancient Persia were nothing more than recent compilations referring to the last stage of Parsiism. But notwithstanding this defect, which could hardly be avoided then, and notwithstanding it's still worse fault, a strange want of critical acumen, the book of Thomas Hyde was the first complete and true picture of modern Parsiism, and it made inquiry into its history the order of the day. A warm appeal made by him to the zeal of travelers, to seek for and procure at any price the sacred books of the Parsis, did not remain ineffectual, and from that time scholars bethought themselves of studying Parsiism in its own home. Eighteen years later, a countryman of Hyde, George Boucher, received from the Parsis in Surat a copy of the Vendidad Sadah, which was brought to England in 1723 by Richard Cobbe. But the old manuscript was a sealed book, and the most that could then be made of it was to hang it by an iron chain to the wall of the Bodleian Library, as a curiosity to be shown to foreigners. A few years later, a Scotchman, named Fraser, went to Surat, with the view of obtaining from the Parsis, not only their books but also a knowledge of their contents. He was not very successful in the first undertaking and utterly failed in the second. In 1754 a young man, twenty years old, Anquetil Duperron, a scholar of the Ecole des Langues Orientales in Paris, happened to see a facsimile of four leaves of the Oxford Vendidad, which had been sent from England, a few years before, to Etienne Fourmont, the Orientalist. He determined at once to give to France both the books of Zoroaster and the first European translation of them. Impatient to set off, without waiting for a mission from the government which had been promised to him, he enlisted as a private soldier in the service of the French East India Company; he embarked at Lorient on the 24th of February 1755, and after three years of endless adventures and dangers through the whole breadth of Hindustan, at the very time when war was raging between France and England, he arrived at last in Surat, where he stayed among the Parsis for three years

more. Here began another struggle, not less hard, but more decisive, against that mistrust and ill-will of the Parsis which had disheartened Fraser; but he came out. of it victorious, and succeeded at last in winning from the Parsis both their books and their knowledge. He came back to Paris on the 14th of March 1764 and deposited on the following day at the Bibliotheque Royale the whole of the Zend-Avesta and copies of most of the traditional books. He spent ten years studying the material he had collected and published in 1771 the first European translation of the Zend-Avesta. A violent dispute broke out at once, as half the learned world denied the authenticity of the Avesta, which it pronounced a forgery. It was the future founder of the Royal Asiatic Society, William Jones, a young Oxonian then, who opened the war. He had been wounded to the quick by the scornful tone adopted by Anquetil towards Hyde and a few other English scholars: the Zend-Avesta suffered for the fault of its introducer, Zoroaster for Anquetil. In a pamphlet written in French, with a verve and in a style which showed him to be a good disciple of Voltaire, W. Jones pointed out and dwelt upon, the oddities and absurdities with which the so-called sacred books of Zoroaster teemed. Anquetil had indeed given full scope to satire by the style he had adopted: he cared very little for literary elegance, and did not mind writing Zend and Persian in French; so the new and strange ideas he had to express looked stranger still in the outlandish garb he gave them. Yet it was less the style than the ideas that shocked the contemporary of Voltaire. His main argument was that books, full of such silly tales, of laws and rules so absurd, of descriptions of gods and demons so grotesque, could not be the work of a sage-like Zoroaster, nor the code of a religion so much celebrated for its simplicity, wisdom, and purity. He concluded that the Avesta was a rhapsody of some modern Guebre. In fact the only thing in which Jones succeeded was to prove decisively that the ancient Persians were not equal to the luminaires of the eighteenth century, and that the authors of the Avesta had not read the Encyclopedie. Jones's censure was echoed in England by Sir John Chardin and Richardson, in Germany by Meiners. Richardson tried to give a scientific character to the attacks of Jones by founding them on philological grounds. That the Avesta was a fabrication of modern times was shown, he argued, by the number of Arabic words he fancied he found both in the Zend and Pahlavi dialects, as no Arabic element was introduced into the Persian idioms earlier than the seventh century; also by the harsh texture of the Zend, contrasted with the rare euphony of the Persian; and, lastly, by the radical difference between the Zend and Persian, both in words and grammar. To these objections, drawn from the form, he added another derived from the uncommon stupidity of the matter. In Germany, Meiners, to the charges brought against the newfound books, added another of a new and unexpected kind, namely, that they spoke of ideas unheard of before, and made known new things. ' Pray, who would dare ascribe to Zoroaster books in which are found numberless names of trees, animals, men, and demons unknown to the ancient Persians; in which are invoked an incredible number of pure animals and other things, which, as appears from the silence of ancient writers, were never known, or at least never worshipped, in Persia? What Greek ever spoke of Hom, of Jamshid, and of such other personages as the fabricators of that rhapsody exalt with every kind of praise, as divine heroes?' Yet, amid his Ciceronian nonsense, Meiners inadvertently made a remark which, if correctly interpreted, might have led to important discoveries. He noticed that many points of resemblance are to be found between the ideas of the Parsis and those of the Brahmans and Musulmans. He saw in this proof that Parsiism is a medley of Brahmanical and Musulman tales. Modern scholarship, starting from the same point, came to that twofold conclusion, that, on the one hand, Parsiism was one of the elements out of which Mohammed formed his religion, and, on the other hand, that the old religions of India and Persia flowed from a common source. ' Not only does the author of that rubbish tell the same tales of numberless demons of either sex as the Indian priests do, but he also prescribes the same remedies to drive them away, and to balk their attempts.' In these words

there was something like the germ of comparative mythology; seldom has a man approached the truth so closely and then departed from it so widely. Anquetil and the Avesta found an eager champion in the person of Kleuker, a professor at the University of Riga. As soon as the French version of the Avesta appeared, he published a German translation of it, and also of Anquetil's historical dissertations. Then, in a series of dissertations of his own, he vindicated the authenticity of the Zend books. Anquetil had already tried to show, in a memoir on Plutarch, that the data of the Avesta fully agree with the account of the Magian religion given in the treatise on 'Isis and Osiris.' Kleuker enlarged the circle of comparison to the whole of ancient literature. He tried also to appeal to internal evidence, an attempt in which he was less successful. The strength of his defense was seldom greater than the strength of the attack. Meiners had pointed out the mythical identity of the Mount Alborg of the Parsis with the Mount Meru of the Hindus, as proof that the Parsis had borrowed their mythology from the Hindus: the conclusion was incorrect, but the remark itself was not so. Kleuker fancied that he could remove the difficulty by stating that Mount Alborg is a real mountain, nay, a doubly real mountain, since there are two mountains of that name, the one in Persia, the other in Armenia, whereas Mount Meru is only to be found in Fairyland, Seldom were worse arguments used in the service of a good cause. Meiners had said that the name of the Parsi demons was of Indian origin, as both languages knew them by the Latin name 'Deus.' This was an incorrect statement, and yet an important observation. The word which means 'a demon' in Persia means quite the contrary in India, and that radical difference is just proof of the two systems being independent of one another. Kleuker pointed out the incorrectness of the statement; but, being unable to account for the identity of the words, he flatly denied it, Kleuker was more successful in the field of philology: he showed, as Anquetil had done, that Zend has no Arabic elements in it, and that Pahlavi itself, which is more modern than Zend, does not contain any Arabic, but only Semitic words of the Aramean dialect, which are easily accounted for by the close relations of Persia with Aramean lands in the time of the Sassanian kings. He showed, lastly, that Arabic words appear only in the very books which Parsi tradition itself considers modern. Another staunch upholder of the Avesta was the numismatologist Tychsen, who, having begun to read the book with prejudice against its authenticity, quitted it with a conviction to the contrary. 'There is nothing in it,' he writes, 'but what befits remote ages, and a man philosophizing in the infancy of the world. Such traces of a recent period as they fancy to have found in it, are either due to misunderstandings or belong to its later portions. On the whole there is marvelous accordance between the Zend-Avesta and the accounts of the ancients with regard to the doctrine and institutions of Zoroaster. Plutarch agrees so well with the Zend books that I think no one will deny the close resemblance of doctrines and identity of origin. Add to all this the incontrovertible argument to be drawn from the language, the antiquity of which is established by the fact that it was necessary to translate a part of the Zend books into Pahlavi, a language which was growing obsolete as early as the time of the Sassanides. Lastly, it cannot be denied that Zoroaster left books, which were, through centuries, the groundwork of the Magic religion, and which were preserved by the Magi, as shown by a series of documents from the time of Hermippus. Therefore I am unable to see why we should not trust the Magi of our days when they ascribe to Zoroaster those traditional books of their ancestors, in which nothing is found to indicate fraud or a modern hand.' Two years afterward, in 1793, was published in Paris a book which, without directly dealing with the Avesta, was the first step taken to make its authenticity incontrovertible. It was the masterly memoir by Sylvestre de Sacy, in which the Pahlavi inscriptions of the first Sassanides were deciphered for the first time and in a decisive manner, De Sacy, in his researches, had chiefly relied on the Pahlavi lexicon published by Anquetil, whose work vindicated itself thus-better than by heaping up arguments-by promoting discoveries. The Pahlavi inscriptions gave the key, as is well known, to the Persian cuneiform

inscriptions, which were in return to put beyond all doubt the genuineness of the Zend language. Tychsen, in an appendix to his Commentaries, pointed to the importance of the new discovery: 'This,' he writes, 'is a proof that the Pahlavi was used during the reign of the Sassanides, for it was from them that these inscriptions emanated, as it was by them-nay, by the first of them, Ardeshtir Babagan-that the doctrine of Zoroaster was revived. One can now understand why the Zend books were translated into Pahlavi. Here, too, everything agrees, and speaks loudly for their antiquity and genuineness.' About the same time Sir William Jones, then president of the Royal Asiatic Society, which he had just founded, resumed in a discourse delivered before that Society the same question he had solved in such an off-hand manner twenty years before. He was no longer the man to say, 'Sied-il a un homme ne dans ce siecle de s'infatuer de fables indiennes?' and although he had still spite against Anquetil, speaks of him with more reserve than in 1771. However, his judgment on the Avesta itself was not altered on the whole, although, as he himself declared, he had not thought it necessary to study the text. But a glance at the Zend glossary published by Anquetil suggested to him a remark which makes Sir William Jones, in spite of himself, the creator of the comparative grammar of Sanskrit and Zend. When I perused the Zend glossary,' he writes, 'I was inexpressibly surprised to find that six or seven words in ten are pure Sanskrit, and even some of their inflections formed by the rules of the Vyacaran, as yushmacam, the genitive plural of yushmad. Now M. Anquetil most certainly, and the Persian compiler most probably, had no knowledge of Sanscrit, and could not, therefore, have invented a list of Sanscrit words; it is, therefore, an authentic list of Zend words, which has been preserved in books or by tradition; it follows that the language of the Zend was at least a dialect of the Sanscrit, approaching perhaps as nearly to it as the Pracrit, or other popular idioms, which we know to have been spoken in India two thousand years ago.' This conclusion, that Zend is a Sanskrit dialect, was incorrect, the connection assumed being too close, but it was a great thing that the near relationship of the two languages should have been brought to light. In 1798 Father Paulo de St. Barthelemy further developed Jones's remark in an essay on the antiquity of the Zend language. He showed its affinity with the Sanskrit by a list of such Zend and Sanskrit words as were least likely to be borrowed, viz. those that designate the degrees of relationship, the limbs of the body, and the most general and essential ideas. Another list, intended to show, on a special topic, how closely connected the two languages are, contains eighteen words taken from the liturgic language used in India and Persia. This list was not very happily drawn up, as out of the eighteen instances there is not a single one that stands inquiry; yet it was a happy idea and one which has not even yet yielded all that it promised. His conclusions were that in a far remote antiquity Sanskrit was spoken in Persia and Media, that it gave birth to the Zend language, and that the Zend-Avesta is authentic: 'Were it but a recent compilation,' he writes, 'as Jones asserts, how is it that the oldest rites of the Parsis, that the old inscriptions of the Persians, the accounts of the Zoroastrian religion in the classical writers, the liturgic prayers of the Parsis, and, lastly, even their books do not reveal the pure Sanskrit, as written in the land wherein the Parsis live, but a mixed language, which is as different from the other dialects of India as French is from Italian?' This amounted, in fact, to saying that the Zend is not derived from the Sanskrit, but that both are derived from another and older language. The Carmelite had a dim notion of that truth, but, as he failed to express it distinctly, it was lost for years, and had to be re-discovered. The first twenty-five years of this century were void of results, but the old and sterile discussions as to the authenticity of the texts continued in England. In 1808 John Leyden regarded Zend as a Prakrit dialect, parallel to Pali; Pali being identical with the Magadhi dialect and Zend with the Sauraseni. In the eyes of Erskine Zend was a Sanskrit dialect, imported from India by the founders of Mazdeism, but never spoken in Persia. His main argument was that Zend is not mentioned among the seven dialects which were current in ancient Persia according to the Farhang-i Jehangiri, and that Pahlavi

and Persian exhibit no close relationship with Zend. In Germany, Meiners had found no followers. The theologians appealed to the Avesta in their polemics, and Rhode sketched the religious history of Persia after the translations of Anquetil. Erskine's essay provoked a decisive answer from Emmanuel Rask, one of the most gifted minds in the new school of philology, who had the honor of being a precursor of both Grimm and Burnouf. He showed that the list of the Jehangiri referred to an epoch later than that to which Zend must have belonged, and to parts of Persia different from those where it must have been spoken; he showed further that modern Persian is not derived from Zend, but from a dialect closely connected with it; and, lastly, he showed what was still more important, that Zend was not derived from Sanskrit. As to the system of its sounds, Zend approaches Persian rather than Sanskrit; and as to its grammatical forms, if they often remind one of Sanskrit, they also often remind one of Greek and Latin, and frequently have a special character of their own. Rask also gave the paradigm of three Zend nouns, belonging to different declensions, as well as the right pronunciation of the Zend letters, several of, which had been incorrectly given by Anquetil. This was the first essay on Zend grammar, and it was a masterly one. The essay published in 1831 by Peter von Bohlen on the origin of the Zend language threw the matter forty years back. According to him, Zend is a Prakrit dialect, as it had been pronounced by Jones, Leyden, and Erskine. His mistake consisted in taking Anquetil's transcriptions of the words, which are often so incorrect as to make them look like corrupted forms when compared with Sanskrit. And, what was worse, he took the proper names in their modern Parsi forms, which often led him to comparisons that would have appalled Menage. Thus Ahriman became a Sanskrit word ariman, which would have meant 'the fiend;' yet Bohlen might have seen in Anquetil's work itself that Ahriman is nothing but the modern form of Angra Mainyu, words which hardly remind one of the Sanskrit ariman. Again, the angel Vohu-mano, or 'good thought,' was reduced, by means of the Parsi form Bahman, to the Sanskrit Bahuman, 'a long-armed god.' At last came Bumouf. From the time when Anquetil had published his translation, that is to say, during seventy years, no real progress had been made in knowledge of the Avesta texts. The notion that Zend and Sanskrit are two kindred languages was the only new idea that had been acquired, but no practical advantage for the interpretation of the texts had resulted from it. Anquetil's translation was still the only guide, and as the doubts about the authenticity of the texts grew fainter, the authority of the translation became greater, the trust reposed in the Avesta being reflected on to the work of its interpreter. The Parsis had been the teachers of Anquetil; and who could ever understand the holy writ of the Parsis better than the Parsis themselves? There was no one who even tried to read the texts by the light of Anquetil's translation, to obtain a direct understanding of them. About 1825 Eugene Bumouf was engaged in a course of researches on the geographical extent of the Aryan languages in India. After he had defined the limits which divide the races speaking Aryan languages from the native non-brahmanical tribes in the south, he wanted to know if a similar boundary had ever existed in the north-west; and if it is outside of India that the origin of the Indian languages and civilization is to be sought for. He was thus led to study the languages of Persia, and, first of all, the oldest of them, the Zend. But as he tried to read the texts by help of Anquetil's translation, he was surprised to find that this was not the clue he had expected. He saw that two causes had misled Anquetil: on the one hand, his teachers, the Parsi dasturs, either knew little themselves or taught him imperfectly, not only the Zend, but even the Pahlavi intended to explain the meaning of the Zend; so that the tradition on which his work rested, being incorrect in itself, corrupted it from the very beginning; on the other hand, as Sanskrit was unknown to him and comparative grammar did not as yet exist, he could not supply the defects of tradition by their aid. Bumouf, laying aside tradition as found in Anquetil's translation, consulted it as found in a much older and purer form, in a Sanskrit translation of the Yasna made in the fifteenth century by the Parsi Neriosengh in accordance with the old

Pahlavi version. The information given by Neriosengh he tested, and either confirmed or corrected, by a comparison of parallel passages and by the help of comparative grammar, which had just been founded by Bopp, and applied by him successfully to the explanation of Zend forms. Thus he succeeded in tracing the general outlines of the Zend lexicon and in fixing its grammatical forms, and founded the only correct method of interpreting the Avesta. He also gave the first notions of comparative mythology of the Avesta and the Veda, by showing the identity of the Vedic Yama with the Avesta Yima, and of TraitAna with Thraetaona and Feridun. Thus he made his 'Commentaire sur le Yasna' a marvelous and unparalleled model of critical insight and steady good sense, equally opposed to the narrowness of mind which clings to matters of fact without rising to their cause and connecting them with the series of associated phenomena, and to the wild and uncontrolled spirit of comparison, which, by comparing everything, confounds everything. Never sacrificing either tradition to comparison or comparison to tradition, he knew how to pass from the one to the other, and was so enabled both to discover facts and to explain them. At the same time the ancient Persian inscriptions at Persepolis and Behistun were deciphered by Bumouf in Paris, by Lassen in Bonn, and by Sir Henry Rawlinson in Persia. Thus was revealed the existence, at the time of the first Achremenian kings, of a language closely connected with that of the Avesta, and the last doubts as to the authenticity of the Zend books were at length removed. It would have required more than an ordinary amount of skepticism to look still upon the Zend as an artificial language, of foreign importation, without root in the land where it was written, and in the conscience of the people for whom it was written, at the moment when a twin language, bearing a striking likeness to it in nearly every feature, was suddenly making itself heard from the mouth of Darius, and speaking from the very tomb of the first Achremenian king. That unexpected voice silenced all controversies, and the last echoes of the loud discussion which had been opened in 1771 died away unheeded.

Chapter II

THE INTERPRETATION OF THE ZEND-AVESTA

The peace did not last long, and a year after the death of Bumouf a new controversy broke out, which still continues, the battle of the methods, that is, the dispute between those who, to interpret the Avesta, rely chiefly or exclusively on tradition, and those who rely only on comparison with the Vedas. The cause of the rupture was the rapid progress made in the knowledge of the Vedic language and literature: the deeper one penetrated into that oldest form of Indian words and thoughts, the more striking appeared its close affinity with the Avesta words and thoughts. Many a mysterious line in the Avesta received an unlooked-for light from the poems of the Indian Rishis, and the long-forgotten past and the origin of many gods and heroes, whom the Parsi worships and extols without knowing who they were and whence they came, were suddenly revealed by the Vedas. Emboldened by its bright discoveries, the comparative method took pity on its slower and less brilliant rival, which was then making its first attempts to unravel the Pahlavi traditional books. Is it worth while, said the Vedic scholars, to try slowly and painfully to extract the secret of the old book from that uncouth literature? Nay, is there any hope that its secret is there? Translating the Avesta in accordance with the Pahlavi is not translating the Avesta, but only translating

the Pahlavi version, which, wherever it has been deciphered, is found to wander strangely from the true meaning of the original text. Tradition, as a rule, is wont to enforce the ideas of its ages into the books of past ages. From the time when the Avesta was written to the time when it was translated, many ideas had undergone great changes: such ideas, tradition must need either misunderstand or not understand at all, and tradition is always either new sense or nonsense. The key to the Avesta is not the Pahlavi, but the Veda. The Avesta and the Veda are two echoes of one and the same voice, the reflex of one and the same thought: the Vedas, therefore, are both the best lexicon and the best commentary to the Avesta. The traditional school replied that translating Zend by means of Sanskrit and the Avesta by means of the Vedas, because Zend and the Avesta are closely related to Sanskrit and the Vedas, is forgetting that relationship is not identity and that what interests the Zend scholar is not to know how far Zend agrees with Sanskrit, but what it is in itself: what he seeks for in the Avesta, is the Avesta, not the Veda. Both the Vedic language and the Vedas are quite unable to teach us what became in Persia of those elements, which are common to the two systems, a thing which tradition alone can teach us. By the comparative method, the Zend *mergha*, which means 'a bird,' would assume the meaning of 'gazelle' to accord with the Sanskrit *mriga*; *ratu*, 'a part of the day,' would be extended to 'a season' out of regard for *ritu*; *mainyu*, 'a spirit,' and *dahyu*, 'a province,' would be degraded to 'anger' and to a set of thieves, and 'the demons,' the *Daevas*, would ascend from their dwelling in hell up to heaven, to meet their philological brother~ the Indian *Devas*. The traditional method, as it starts from matters of facts, moves always in the field of reality; the comparative method starts from a hypothesis, moves in a vacuum, and builds up a fanciful religion and a fanciful language. Such being the methods of the two schools, it often happened that a passage, translated by two scholars, one of each school, took so different an aspect that a layman would have been quite unable to suspect that it was one and the same passage he had read twice. Yet the divergence between the two methods is more apparent than real and proceeds from an imperfect notion of the field in which each of them ought to work. They ought not to oppose, but assist one another, as they are not intended to instruct us about the same kind of facts, but about two kinds of facts quite different and independent. No language, no religion, that has lived long and changed much, can be understood at any moment of its development unless we know what it became afterwards, and what it was before. The language and religion of the Avesta record but a moment in the long life of the Iranian language and thought, so that we are unable to understand them unless we know what they became and whence they came. What they became we learn directly from tradition since the tradition arose from the very ideas which the Avesta expresses; whence they came we learn indirectly from the Vedas because the Vedas come from the same source as the Avesta. Therefore it cannot happen that the tradition and the Veda will really contradict one another, if we take care to ask from each only what it knows, from one the present, and the past from the other. Each method is equally right and equally efficacious, at its proper time and in its right place. The first place belongs to tradition, as it comes straight from the Avesta. The second inquiry, to be successful, requires infinite prudence and care: the Veda is not the past of the Avesta, as the Avesta is the past of tradition; the Avesta and Veda are not derived from one another, but from one and the same original, diversely altered in each, and, therefore, there are two stages of variation between them, whereas from the Avesta to tradition there is only one. The Veda, if first interrogated, gives no valuable evidence, as the words and gods, common to the two systems, may not have retained in both the same meaning they had in the Indo-Iranian period: they may have preserved it in one and lost it in the other, or they may have both altered it, but each in a different way. The Veda, generally speaking, cannot help in discovering matters of fact in the Avesta, but only in explaining to them when discovered by tradition. If we review the discoveries made by the masters of the comparative school, it will be seen

that they have in reality started, without noticing it, from facts formerly established by tradition. In fact, tradition gives the materials, and comparison puts them in order. It is not possible, either to know the Avesta without the former or to understand it without the latter. The traditional school, and especially its indefatigable and well-deserving leader, Spiegel, made us acquainted with the nature of the old Iranian religion by gathering together all its materials; the comparative school tried to explain its growth, The traditional school published the text and the traditional translations and produced the first Parsi grammar, the first Pahlavi grammar, and the first translation of the Avesta which had been made since Anquetil. The danger with it is that it shows itself too apt to stop at tradition, instead of going from it to comparison. When it undertakes to expound the history of the religion, it cannot but be misled by tradition. Any living people, although its existing state of mind is but the result of various and changing states through many successive ages, yet, at any particular moment of its life, keeps the remains of its former stages of thought in order, under the control of the principle that is then predominant. Thus it happens that their ideas are connected together in a way that seldom agrees with their historical sequence: chronological order is lost to sight and replaced by logical order, and the past is read into the present. Comparison alone can enable us to put things in their proper place, to trace their birth, their growth, their changes, their former relations, and lead us from the logical order, which is a shadow, to the historical order, which is the substance. The comparative school developed Indo-Iranian mythology. Roth showed after Burnouf how the epical history of Iran was derived from the same source as the myths of Vedic India and pointed out the primitive identity of Ahura Mazda, the supreme god of Iran, with Varuna, the supreme god of the Vedic age. In the same direction Windischmann, in his ' Zoroastrian Essays ' and in his studies on Mithra and Anahita, displayed singular sagacity. But the dangers of the method came to light in the works of Haug, who, giving a definite form to a system still fluctuating, converted Mazdeism into a religious revolution against Vedic polytheism, found historical allusions to that schism both in the Avesta and in the Veda, pointed out curses against Zoroaster in the Vedas, and, in short, transformed, as it were, the two books into historical pamphlets. In the contest about the authenticity of the Avesta, one party must necessarily have been right and the other wrong; but in the present struggle the issue is not so clear, as both parties are partly right and partly wrong. Both of them, by following their principles, have rendered such services to science as seem to give each a right to cling to its own method more firmly than ever. Yet it is to be hoped that they will see at last that they must be allies, not enemies and that their common work must be begun by the one and completed by the other.

CHAPTER III

THE FORMATION OF THE ZEND-AVESTA

§ 1. The collection of Zend fragments, known as the Zend-Avesta, is divided, in its usual form, into two parts. The first part, or the Avesta properly so-called, contains the Vendidad, the Visperad, and the Yasna. The Vendidad is a compilation of religious laws and of mythical tales; the Visperad is a collection of litanies for the sacrifice; and the Yasna is composed of litanies of the same kind and of five hymns, or Gathas written in a special dialect, older than the general language of the Avesta. These three books are found in manuscripts in two different forms: either each by itself, in which case they are generally accompanied by a Pahlavi translation; or the three mingled together according to the requirements of the liturgy, as they are not each recited separately in their entirety, but the chapters of the different books are intermingled;

and in this case, the collection is called the Vendidad Sadah or 'Vendidad pure,' as it exhibits the original text alone, without a translation. The second part, generally known as the Khorda Avesta or 'Small Avesta,' is composed of short prayers which are recited not only by the priests, but by all the faithful, at certain moments of the day, month, or year, and in presence of the different elements; these prayers are the five Gah, the thirty formulas of the Strozah, the three Afrigan, and the six Nyayis. But it is also usual to include in the Khorda Avesta, although forming no real part of it, the Yasts or hymns of praise and glorification to the several Izads, and several fragments, the most important of which is the Hadokht Nosk. § 2. That the extent of the sacred literature of Mazdeism was formerly much greater than it is now, appears not only from internal evidence, that is, from the fragmentary character of the book but is also proved by historical evidence. In the first place, the Arab conquest proved fatal to the religious literature of the Sassanian ages, a great part of which was either destroyed by the fanaticism of the conquerors and the new converts or lost during the long exodus of the Parsis. Thus the Pahlavi translation of the Vendidad, which was not finished before the latter end of the Sassanian dynasty, contains not a few Zend quotations from books which are no longer in existence; other quotations, as remarkable in their importance as in their contents, are to be found in Pahlavi and Parsi tracts, like the Nirangistan and the Aogemaide. The Bundahis contains much matter which is not spoken of in the existing Avesta, but which is very likely to have been taken from Zend books which were still in the hands of its compiler. It is a tradition with the Parsis, that the Yasts were originally thirty in number, there having been one for each of the thirty Izads who preside over the thirty days of the month, yet there are only eighteen still extant. The cause that preserved the Avesta is obvious; taken as a whole, it does not profess to be a religious encyclopedia, but only a liturgical collection, and it bears more likeness to a Prayer Book than to the Bible. It can be readily conceived that the Vendidad Sadah, which had to be recited every day, would be more carefully preserved than the Yasts, which are generally recited once a month; and these again more carefully than other books, which, however sacred they might be, were not used in the performance of worship. Many texts, no doubt, were lost in consequence of the Arab conquest, but mostly such as would have more importance in the eyes of the theologian than in those of the priest. We have a fair specimen of what these lost texts may have been in the few non-liturgical fragments which we still possess, such as the Vistasp Yast and the blessing of Zoroaster upon King Vistasp, which belong to the old epic cycle of Iran, and the Hadokht Nosk, which treats of the fate of the soul after death. § 3. But if we have lost much of the Sassanian sacred literature, Sassanian Persia herself, if we may trust Parsi tradition, had lost still more of the original books. The primitive Avesta, as revealed by Ormazd to Zoroaster and by Zoroaster to Vistasp, king of Bactria, was supposed to have been composed of twenty-one Nosks or Books, the greater part of which was burnt by Iskander the Rumi (Alexander the Great). After his death, the priests of the Zoroastrian religion met together, and by collecting the various fragments that had escaped the ravages of the war and others that they knew by heart, they formed the present collection, which is a very small part of the original book, as out of the twenty-one Nosks there was only one that was preserved in its entirety, the Vendidad. This tradition is very old and may be traced back from the present period even to Sassanian times. It involves the assumption that the Avesta is the remnant of the sacred literature of Persia under the last Achaemenian kings. To ascertain whether this inference is correct, and to what extent it may be so, we must first try to define, as accurately as we can, the exact time at which the collection, now in existence, was formed. § 4. The Ravaet quoted above states that it was formed 'after the death of Iskander,' which expression is rather vague, and may as well mean 'centuries after his death' as 'immediately after his death.' It is, in fact, hardly to be doubted that the latter was really what the writer meant; yet, as the date of that Ravaet is very recent, we had better look for older and more precise traditions. We find such a one

in the Dinkart, a Pahlavi book which enjoys great authority with the Parsis of our days, and which, although it contains many things of late origin, also comprises many old and valuable traditions. According to a proclamation, ascribed to Khosrav Anosharvan (531-579), the collection of the Avesta fragments was begun in the reign of the last Arsacides and was finished under Shapur II (309-380). King Valkash (Vologeses), it is said, first ordered all the fragments of the Avesta which might have escaped the ravages of Iskander, or been preserved by oral tradition, to be searched for and collected together. The first Sassanian king, Ardeshir Babagan, made the Avesta the sacred book of Iran, and Mazdeism the state religion: at last, Adarbad Mahraspand, under Shapur II, purified the Avesta and fixed the number of the Nasks, and Shapur proclaimed to the heterodox: Now that we have recognized the law of the world here below, they shall not allow the infidelity of any one whatever, as I shall strive that it may be so. § 5. The authenticity of this record has been called in question, chiefly, I think, on account of the part that it ascribes to an Arsacide prince, which seems hardly to agree with the ideas generally entertained about the character of the Sassanian revolution. Most Parsi and Muhammedan writers agree that it was the Sassanian dynasty that raised the Zoroastrian religion from the state of humiliation into which the Greek invasion had made it sink, and, while it gave the signal for a revival of the old national spirit, made Mazdeism one of the corner stones of the new establishment. Therefore it seems strange to hear that the first step taken to make Mazdeism a state religion was taken by one of those very Philhellenic Parthian princes, who were so fully imbued with Greek ideas and manners. Yet this is the very reason why we ought to feel some hesitation in rejecting this document, and its being at variance with the general Parsi view speaks rather for its authenticity; for as it was the general post-Sassanian tradition that the restoration of Mazdeism was the work of the first Sassanian kings, no Parsi would ever have thought of making them share what was in his eyes their first and best title of honor with any of the despised princes of the Parthian dynasty. § 6. It is difficult, of course, to prove directly the authenticity of this record, the more so as we do not even know who was the king alluded to. There were, in fact, four kings at least who bore the name of Valkhash: the most celebrated and best known of the four was Vologeses I, the contemporary of Nero. Now that Zoroastrianism prevailed with him, or at least with members of his family, we see from the conduct of his brother Tiridates, who was a Magian (Magus); and by this term, we must not understand a magician, but a priest, and one of the Zoroastrian religion. That he was a priest appears from Tacitus' testimony; that he was a Zoroastrian is shown by his scruples about the worship of the elements. When he came from Asia to Rome to receive the crown of Armenia at the hands of Nero, he wanted not to come by sea, but rode along the coasts, because the Magi were forbidden to defile the sea. This is quite in the spirit of later Zoroastrianism and savors much of Mazdeism. That Vologeses himself shared the religious scruples of his brother appears from his answer to Nero, who insisted upon his coming to Rome also: 'Come yourself, it is easier for you to cross such immensity of sea.' § 7. Thus we hear on one hand from the Parsis that the first collection of the Avesta was made by an Arsacide named Vologese; and we hear, on the other hand, from a quite independent source, that an Arsacide named Vologeses behaved himself as a follower of the Avesta might have done. In all this there is no evidence that it is Vologeses I who is mentioned in the Dinkart, much less that he was really the first editor of the Avesta; but it shows at all events that the first attempt to recover the sacred literature of Iran might very well have been made by an Arsacide and that we may trust, in this matter, to a document which has been written perhaps by a Sassanian king, but, at any rate, in a Sassanian spirit. In fact, in the struggle between Ardavan and Ardeshir, there was no religious interest at stake, but only a political one; and we are expressly told by Hamza that between Ardeshir and his adversaries there was perfect accord in religious matters. It can, therefore, be fairly admitted that even in the time and at the court of the Philhellenic Parthians a Zoroastrian

movement may have originated, and that there came a time when they perceived that a national religion is a part of national life. It was the merit of the Sassanides that they saw the drift of this idea which they had the good fortune to carry out; and this would not be the only instance, in the history of the world, of an idea being sown by one party and its advantages reaped by their adversaries. § 8. Another presumptive evidence of the groundwork of the Avesta being anterior to the age of the Sassanians is given by the language in which it is written. That language not only was not but had never been, the national language of Persia. It is indeed closely connected with the ancient Persian, as found in the cuneiform inscriptions of the Achaemenian kings, from which modern Persian is derived; but the relations between ancient Persian and Zend are of such a kind that neither language can be conceived as being derived from the other; they are not one and the same language in two different stages of its development, but two independent dialects in nearly the same stage, which is a proof that they did not belong to the same country, and, therefore, that Zend was not the language of Persia. Now the language used in Persia after the death of Alexander, under the Arsacides and Sassanides, that is, during the period in which the Avesta must have been edited, was Pahlavi, which is not derived from Zend, but from ancient Persian, being the middle dialect between ancient and modern Persian. Therefore, if the Sassanian kings had conceived the project of having religious books of their own written and composed, it is not likely that they would have had them written in an old foreign dialect, but in the old national language, the more so, because, owing both to their origin and their policy, they were bound to be the representatives of the genuine old Persian tradition. Therefore, if they adopted Zena as the language of religion, it must have been because it was already so when they appeared, that is to say, because the only remnants of sacred literature then extant were written in Zend, and the editors of the Avesta had Zend writings before them. This does not, of course, prove that all we find in the Avesta is pre-Sassanian and that the editors did not compose new Zend texts. Although Zend was not only a dead language, but also a foreign one, it was not an unknown language: that it was well understood by the learned class, the priests appears from the Pahlavi translation, which was made by them, and which, the deeper one enters into the meaning of the text, has the fuller justice done to its merits. The earliest date that can be ascribed to that translation, in its present form, is the last century of the Sassanian dynasty, as it contains an allusion to the death of the heresiarch Mazdak, the son of Bamdad, who was put to death at the beginning of the reign of Khosrav Anosharvan (about 531). Now the ability to translate a dead language is a good test of the ability to write in it, and in the question of the age of the Zend texts the possibility of new ones having been composed by the editors cannot be excluded a priori. Nay, we shall see further on that there are passages in these texts which look very modern, and may have been written at the time when the book took its last and definitive form. But whatever may be the proportion of the new texts to the old ones (which I believe to be very small), it is quite certain that the bulk of the Avesta is pre-Sassanian. § 9. The date assigned by the Dinkart to the final edition of the Avesta and to its promulgation as the sacred law of the nation agrees with what we know of the religious state of Iran in the times of Shapur II. Mazdeism had just been threatened with destruction by a new religion sprung from itself, the religion of Mint, which for a while numbered a king amongst its followers (Shapur I, 240- 270). Mazdeism was shaken for a long time, and when Mini was put to death, his work did not perish with him. In the Kissah-i Sangrah, Zoroaster is introduced prophesying that the holy religion will be overthrown three times and restored three times; overthrown the first time by Iskander, it will be restored by Ardeshir; overthrown again, it will be restored by Shapur II and Adarbid Mahraspand; and, lastly, it will be overthrown by the Arabs and restored at the end of time by Soshyos. The Parsi traditions about Adarbad, although they are mixed with much fable, allow some historical truth to show itself. He was a holy man under Shapur II, who, as there were many religions and heresies in Iran and the

true religion was falling into oblivion, restored it through a miracle, as he gave a sign of its truth by allowing melted brass to be poured on his breast, without his being injured. Setting aside the miracle, which is most probably borrowed from the legend of Zoroaster, this account receives its true interpretation from the passages in the *Kissah-i Sangrah* and the *Dinkart*, which imply that Adarbad restored Mazdeism, which had been shaken by the Manichean heresy, and that in order to settle it upon a solid and lasting base, he gave a definitive form to the religious book of Iran and closed the Holy Writ. And even nowadays the Parsi, while reciting the *Patet*, acknowledges Adarbad as the third founder of the Avesta; the first being Zoroaster, who received it from Ormazd; the second Gamasp, who received it from Zoroaster; and the third Adarbad, who taught it and restored it to its purity. Therefore, so far as we can trust to inferences that rest upon such scanty and vague testimonies, it seems likely that the Avesta took its definitive form from the hands of Adarbad Mahraspand, under King Shapur II, in consequence of the dangers with which Mani's heresy had threatened the national religion. As the death of Mani and the first persecution of his followers took place some thirty years before Shapur's accession to the throne, it may be presumed that the last revision of the Avesta was made in the first years of the new reign, when the agitation aroused by Mani's doctrines and imperfectly allayed by the persecution of his disciples had not yet subsided, and the old religion was still shaking on its base. § 10. It follows hence that Zend texts may have been composed even as late as the fourth century A. D. This is, of course, a mere theoretical possibility, for although the liturgical parts of the *Yasna*, the *Visperad*, the *Sirozah*, and the *Khorda Avesta* must be ascribed to a later time than the *Gathas*, the *Vendidad*, and the *Yasts*, and may belong to some period of revision, they certainly do not belong to the period of this last revision. Adarbad was only the last editor of the Avesta, and it is likely, nay, it is beyond all question, that the doctors of the law, before his time, had tried to put the fragments in order, to connect them, and to fill up the gaps as far as the practical purposes of liturgy required it. Therefore instead of saying that there are parts of the Avesta that may belong to so late a period as the fourth century, it is more correct to say that no part of it can belong to a later date. There are two passages in the *Vendidad* which seem to contain internal evidence of their date, and in both cases, it points to Sassanian times, nay, the second of them point! to the age of Manicheism. The first is found in the eighteenth Fargard (§ 10): Ahura Mazda, while cursing those who teach a wrong law, exclaims: ' And he who would set that man at liberty, when bound in prison, does no better deed than if he should flay a man alive and cut off his head.' This anathema indicates a time when Mazdeism was a state religion and had to fight against heresy; it must, therefore, belong to Sassanian times. These lines are fully illustrated by a Parsi book of the same period, the *Mainyo-i-Khard*: ' Good government is that which maintains and orders the true law and custom of the city people and poor untroubled, and thrusts out improper law and custom;... and keeps in progress the worship of God, and duties, and good works; ... and will resign the body, and that also which [is] its own life, for the sake of the good religion of the Mazdayasnians. And if [there] be any one who shall stay [away] from the way of God, then it orders him to return thereto, and makes him a prisoner, and brings [him] back to the way of God; and will bestow, from the wealth that is his, the share of God, and the worthy, and good works, and the poor; and will deliver up the body on account of the soul. A good king who [is] of that sort, is called like the Yazads and the Ameshaspendis.' What doctrines are alluded to by the *Vendidad* is not explained: it appears from the context that it had in view such sects as released the faithful from the yoke of religious practices, as it anathematizes, at the same time, those who have continued for three years without wearing the sacred girdle. We know too little of the Manichean liturgy to guess if the Manicheans are here alluded to: that Mani should have rejected many Zoroastrian practices is not unlikely, as his aim was to found a universal religion. While he pushed to extremes several of the Zoroastrian tenets, especially those which had taken,

or might receive, a moral or metaphysical meaning, he must have been very regardless of practices which could not be ennobled into moral symbolism. However it may be with regard to the foregoing passage, it is difficult not to see a direct allusion to Manicheism in lines like the following. (IV, 47 seq.): 'Verily I say it unto thee, O Spitama Zarathustra! the man who has a wife is far above him who begets no sons; he who keeps a house is far above him who has none; he who has children is far above the childless man; he who has riches is far above him who has none. 'And of two men, he who fills himself with meat is filled with the good spirit much more than he who does not so; the latter is all but dead; the former is above him by the worth of an Asperena, by the worth of a sheep, by the worth of an ox, by the worth of a man. 'It is this man that can strive against the onsets of Asto-vidhotu; that can strive against the self-moving arrow; that can strive against the winter fiend, with the thinnest garment on; that can strive against the wicked tyrant and smite him on the head; it is this man that can strive against the ungodly Ashemaogha who does not eat.' That this is a bit of religious polemics, and that it refers to definite doctrines and tenets which were held at the time when it was written, can hardly be doubted. It may remind one of the Christian doctrines; and, in fact, it was nearly in the same tone, and with the same expressions, that in the fifth century King Yazdgard branded the Christians in Armenia. But however eager the Christian propaganda may have been for a time in Persia, they never endangered the state religion. The real enemy was the heresy sprung from Mazdeism itself; and Christianity, coming from abroad, was more of a political than a religious foe. And, in point of fact, the description in the above passage agrees better with the Manichean doctrines than with the Christian. Like Mani, Christian teachers held the single life holier than the state of matrimony, yet they had not forbidden marriage, which Mani did; they put poor Lazarus above Dives, but they never forbade trade and husbandry, which Mani did; and, lastly, they never prohibited the eating of flesh, which was one of the chief precepts of Mani. We find, therefore, in this passage, an illustration, from the Avesta itself, of the celebrated doctrine of the three seals with which Mani had sealed the bosom, the hand, and the mouth of his disciples (*signaculum sinus, manus, oris*). § 11. We must now go a step farther back, and try to solve the question whence came the original texts out of which the editors of the Avesta formed their collection. Setting aside the Dinkart, we have no oriental document to help us in tracing them through the age of the Arsacides, a complete historical desert, and we are driven for information to the classical writers who are, on this point, neither very clear nor always credible. The mention of books ascribed to Zoroaster occurs not seldom during that period, but very often it applies to Alexandrian and Gnostic Apocrypha. Yet there are a few passages that make it pretty certain that there was a Mazdean literature in existence in those times. Pausanias, traveling through Lydia in the second century of our era, saw and heard Magian priests singing hymns from a book; whether these hymns were the same as the Gathas, still extant, we cannot ascertain, but this shows that there were Gathas. The existence of a Zoroastrian literature might be traced back as far as the third century before Christ, if Pliny could be credited when he says that Hermippus had given an analysis of the books of Zoroaster, which are said to have amounted to 2,000,000 lines'. For want of external evidence for ascertaining whether the original texts were already in existence in the later years of the Achremenian dynasty, we must seek for internal evidence. A comparison between the ideas expressed in our texts and what we know of the ideas of Achremenian Persia may perhaps lead to safer inferences. § 12. That all the Avesta ideas were already fully developed in the time, or, at least, at the end of the Achemenian dynasty, appears from the perfect accordance of the account of Mazdeism in Theopompos with the data of the Zend books. All the main features of Mazdean belief, namely, the existence of two principles, a good and an evil one, Ormazd and Ahriman, the antithetical creations of the two supreme powers, the division of all the beings in nature into two corresponding classes, the limited duration of the world, the end of the struggle between Ormazd

and Ahriman by the defeat and destruction of the evil principle, the resurrection of the dead, and the everlasting life, all these tenets of the Avesta had already been established at the time of Philip and Aristotle. Therefore we must admit that the religious literature then in existence, if there were any, must have differed but little, so far as its contents were concerned, from the Avesta; its extent was greater of course, and we have proof of this in this very account of Theopompos, which gives us details nowhere to be found in the present texts, and yet the authenticity of which is made quite certain by comparative mythology. Therefore there is nothing that forbids us to believe, with the Parsis, that the fragments of which the Avesta is composed were already in existence before the Greek invasion a. § 13. But it does not follow hence that the Achaemenian Avesta was the sacred book of the Achaemenian and of Persia, and it must not be forgotten that the account in Plutarch is not about the religion of Persia, but about the belief of the Magi and the lore of Zoroaster. Now if we consider that the two characteristic features of Avestean Magism are, so far as belief goes, the admission of two principles, and so far as practice is concerned, the prohibition of burying the dead, we find that there is no evidence that Achaemenian Persia admitted the former, and there is evidence that she did not admit the latter. But, at the same time, it appears that both the belief and the practice were already in existence, though peculiar to one class, the sacerdotal class, the Magi. The question whether the Achaemenian kings believed in dualism and knew of Ahriman, is not yet settled. Much stress has often been laid on the absence of the name of Ahriman in the religious formulae engraved by Darius and Xerxes on the rocks at Persepolis and Naqs-i Rostam. But it is never safe to draw wide conclusions from negative facts: Darius and Xerxes speak of Auramazda quite in the style of the Avesta, and they are not speaking of Ahriman is no sufficient proof of their not knowing him; they did not intend to publish a complete creed, nor had they to inscribe articles of faith. The account of the Persian religion in Herodotus also leaves or seems to leave, Ahriman unnoticed. But it must be borne in mind that he does not expound the religious conceptions of the Persians, but only their religious customs; he describes their worship more than their dogmas, and not a single tenet is mentioned. He seems even not to know anything of Ormazd, who was, however, most certainly the supreme god of Persia in his days; yet, in fact, he clearly alludes to Ormazd, when he states that the Persians worship Zeus on the summits of mountains, and call by the name of Zeus the whole circle of the heavens, which exactly agrees with the character of Ormazd. In the same way the existence of Ahriman is indirectly pointed to by the duty enforced upon the faithful to persecute and kill noxious animals, as it was only on account of their being creatures of the evil principle and incarnations of it, that this custom was enjoined as a religious duty. It appears, it is true, from the words of Herodotus, that it was only a custom peculiar to the Magi; but it shows, at least, that the belief in Ahriman was already then in existence, and that dualism was constituted, at least, as a Magian article of faith. If we pass now from dogma to practice, we find that the most important practice of the Avesta law was either disregarded by the Achaemenian kings, or unknown to them. According to the Avesta burying corpses in the earth is one of the most heinous sins that can be committed; we know that under the Sassanians a prime minister, Seoses, paid with his life for an infraction of that law. Corpses were to be laid down on the summits of mountains, there to be devoured by birds and dogs; the exposure of corpses was the most striking practice of Mazdean profession, and its adoption was the sign of conversion. Now under the Achaemenian rule, not only the burial of the dead was not forbidden, but it was the general practice. Persians, says Herodotus, bury their dead in the earth, after having coated them with wax. But Herodotus, immediately after stating that the Persians inter they are dead, adds that the Magi do not follow the general practice, but lay the corpses down on the ground, to be devoured by birds. So what became a law for all people, whether laymen or priests, under the rule of the Sassanians, was only the custom of the Magi, under the Achaemenians. The obvious conclusion is that

the ideas and customs which are found in the Avesta were already in existence under the Achemenian kings; but that taken as a whole, they were not the general ideas and customs of the whole of Persia, but only of the sacerdotal caste. There were, therefore, practically, two religions in Iran, the one for laymen and the other for priests. The Avesta was originally the sacred book only of the Magi, and the progress of the religious evolution was to extend to laymen what was the custom of the priests. § 14. We are now able to understand how it was that the sacred book of Persia was written in a non-Persian dialect: it had been written in the language of its composers, the 'Magi, who were not Persians. Between the priests and the people, there was not only a difference of calling but also a difference of race, as the sacerdotal caste came from a non-Persian province. What that province was we know both from Greek historians and from Parsi traditions. All classical writers, from Herodotus down to Ammianus, agree in pointing to Media as the seat and native place of the Magi. 'In Media,' says Marcellinus (XXIII, 6), 'are the fertile fields of the Magi ... (having been taught in the magic science by King Hystaspes) they handed it down to their posterity, and thus from Hystaspes to the present age an immense family was developed, hereditarily devoted to the worship of the gods... In former times their number was very scanty..., but they grew up by and by into the number and name of a nation, and inhabiting towns without walls they were allowed to live according to their own laws, protected by religious awe.' Putting aside the legendary account of their origin, one sees from this passage that in the time of Marcellinus (fourth cent. A.D.) there was in Media a tribe, called Magi, which had the hereditary privilege of providing Iran with priests. Strabo, writing three centuries before Marcellinus, considered the Magi as a sacerdotal tribe spread over the land. Lastly, we see in Herodotus (III, 65) that the usurpation of the Magian Smerdis was interpreted by Cambyses as an attempt of the Medes to recover the hegemony they had lost, and when we learn from Herodotus (I, 101) that the Medes were divided into several tribes, Busae, Paraetakeni Strouchates, Arizanti, Budii, and Magi, without his making any remark on the last name, we can hardly have any doubt that the priests known as Magi belonged to the tribe of the Magi, that they were named after their origin, and that the account of Marcellinus may be correct even for so early a period as that of Herodotus. § 15. Parsi traditions agree with Greek testimonies. That the priesthood was hereditary, we see from the statement in the Bundahis, that all the Maubeds are descendants from King Minochihr, and even nowadays the priesthood cannot extend beyond the priestly families; the son of a Dastur is not obliged to be a Dastur, but no one that is not the son of a Dastur can become one. That they came from Media, we see from the traditions about the native place of Zoroaster, their chief and the founder of their religion. Although epic legends place the cradle of Mazdean power in Bactria, at the court of King Vistasp, Bactria was only the first conquest of Zoroaster, it was neither his native place nor the cradle of his religion. Although there are two different traditions on this point, both agree in pointing to Media; according to the one he was born in Rai, that is in Media, properly so-called; according to the other he was born in Shiz, that is in Media Atropatene. The former tradition seems to be the older; it is expressed directly in the Pahlavi Commentary to Vendidad I, 16; and there is in the Avesta itself (Yasna XIX, 18 (50)) a passage that either alludes to it or shows how it originated. 'How many masters are there?' 'There are the master of the house, the lord of the borough, the lord of the town, the lord of the province, and the Zarathustra (the high-priest) as the fifth. So is it in all lands, except in the Zarathustrian realm; for there are there only four masters, in Raha, the Zarathustrian city' 'Who are they?' 'They are the master of the house, the lord of the borough, the lord of the town, and Zarathustra is the fourth.' This amounts to saying that the high-priest, the Maubedan Maubed, held in Rai the position of the dahvyuma, or lord of the land, and was the chief magistrate. It may be suspected that this was the independent sacerdotal state which is spoken of in Marcellinus, and this suspicion is raised to a certain degree of probability by the following lines in Yaqut: ' Ustunawand, a

celebrated fortress in the district of Danbawand, in the province of Rai. It is very old, and was strongly fortified. It is said to have been in existence for more than 3000 years, and to have been the stronghold of the Masmoghan of the land during the times of paganism. This word, which designates the high-priest of the Zoroastrian religion, is composed of mas, "great," and moghan, which means "magian." Khaled besieged it, and destroyed the power of the last of them.' According to another tradition Zarathustra was born in Atropatene. The very same commentary which describes Ragha as being identical with Rai, and the native place of Zartust, also informs us that Ragha was thought by others to be Atropatene. Traditions, of which unfortunately we have only late records, make him a native of Shiz, the capital of Atropatene: 'in Shiz is the fire temple of Azerekhsh, the most celebrated of the Pyraea of the Magi; in the days of the fire-worship, the kings always came on foot, upon pilgrimage. The temple of Azerekhsh is ascribed to Zeratusht, the founder of the Magian religion, who went, it is said, from Shiz to the mountain of Sebilan, and, after remaining there some time in retirement, returned with the Zend-Avesta, which, although written in the old Persian language, could not be understood without a commentary. After this he declared himself to be a prophet.' Now we read in the Bundahis that Zartust founded his religion by offering a sacrifice in Iran Veg (Airyanem Vaego). Although this detail referred originally to the mythical character of Zoroaster, and Iran Veg was primitively no real country, yet as it was afterwards identified with the basin of the Aras (Vanguhi Daitya), this identification is a proof that the cradle of the new religion was looked for OR the banks of the Aras. In the Avesta itself we read that Zoroaster was born and received the law from Ormazd on a mountain, by the river Darega', a name which strikingly reminds one of the modern Darah river, which falls from the Sebilan mount into the Aras. To decide which of the two places, Rai or Atropatene, had the better claim to be called the native place of Zoroaster is of course impossible. The conflict of the two traditions must be interpreted as an indication that both places were important seats of the Magian worship. That both traditions may rely on the Avesta is perhaps a sign that the Avesta contains two series of documents, the one emanating from the Magi of Ragha, and the other from the Magi of Atropatene. Which of the two places had the older claim is also a question hardly to be settled in the present state of our knowledge. Whether Magism came from Ragha to Atropatene, or from Atropatene to Ragha, in either case it had its origin in Media. That Persia should have submitted in religious matters to a foreign tribe will surprise no one who thinks of the influence of the Etruscan augurs in Rome. The Magi might be hated as Medes, but they were respected and feared as priests. When political revolutions gave vent to national hate, the Persian might willingly indulge it, and revel in the blood of the foreign priest; yet whenever he had to invoke the favor of the gods, he was obliged to acknowledge that he could not do without the detested tribe, and that they alone knew how to make themselves heard by heaven. When and how the religious hegemony of Media arose—we cannot say: it is but natural that Media, having risen sooner to a high degree of civilization, should have given to religion and worship a more systematic and elaborate form, and in religion, as in politics, the best-organized power must sooner or later get the upper hand. It is likely that it began with the conquest of Media by Cyrus: *Media capta ferum victorem cepit...* Cyrus is said to have introduced the Magian priesthood into Persia (Xenophon, *Cyrop.* VIII, 1, 23), which agrees with the legend mentioned by Nikolaus that it was on the occasion of the miraculous escape of Croesus that the Persians remembered the old *λογία* of Zoroaster forbidding the dead to be burnt. The Media origin of the Magi accounts for a fact which perplexes at first sight, namely, the absence of the name of the Magi from the book written by themselves; which is natural enough if the word Magu was not the name of the priest as a priest, but as a member of the tribe of the Magi. The proper word for a priest in the Avesta is Athravan, literally, 'fire-man,' and that this was his name with the Persians too appears from the statement in Strabo (XV, 7 33) that the Magi are also called

Πύραθοι. It is easy to conceive that the Persians, especially in ordinary parlance, would rather designate their priests after their origin than after their functions; but the Magi themselves had no reason to follow the Persian custom, which was not always free from an implication of spite or scorn. The only passage into which the word found its way is just one that betrays the existence of this feeling: the enemy of the priests is not called, as would be expected, an Athrava-tbis, 'a hater of the Athravans' (cf. the Indian Brahma-dvish), but a Moghu-tbis, 'a hater of the Magi.' The name, it is true, became current in Pahlavi and modern Persian, but it was at a time when the old national quarrels between Media and Persia were quenched, and the word could no longer carry any offensive idea with it. § 16. The results of the foregoing research may be summed up as follows- The original texts of the Avesta were not written by Persians, as they are in a language which was not used in Persia, they prescribe certain customs which were unknown to Persia, and proscribe others which were current in Persia. They were written in Media, by the priests of Ragha and Atropatene, in the language of Media, and they exhibit the ideas of the sacerdotal class under the Achaemenian dynasty. It does not necessarily follow from this, that the original fragments were already written at the time of Herodotus. But as the Magi of that time sang songs of their gods during sacrifice, it is very likely that there was already a sacred literature in existence. The very fact that no sacrifice could be performed without the assistance of the Magi makes it highly probable that they were in possession of rites, prayers, and hymns very well composed and arranged, and not unlike those of the Brahmans; their authority can only be accounted for by the power of a strongly defined ritual and liturgy. There must, therefore, have been a collection of formulae and hymns, and it is quite possible that Herodotus may have heard the Magi sing, in the fifth century B.C., the very same Githas which are sung nowadays by the Mobeds in Bombay. A part of the Avesta, the liturgical part, would therefore have been in fact, a sacred book for the Persians. It had not been written by them, but it was sung for their benefit. That Zend hymns should have been sung before a Persian-speaking people is not stranger than Latin words being sung by Frenchmen, Germans, and Italians; the only difference being that, owing to the close affinity of Zend to Persian, the Persians may have been able to understand the prayers of their priests. § 17. It may, therefore, be fairly admitted that, on the whole, the present texts are derived from texts already existing under the Achraemenian kings. Some parts of the collection are undoubtedly older than others; thus, the Gathas are certainly older than the rest of the Avesta, as they are often quoted and praised in the Yasna and the Vendidad; but it is scarcely possible to go farther than a logical chronology. One might feel inclined, at first sight, to assign to a very recent date, perhaps to the last revision of the Avesta, those long enumerations of gods so symmetrically elaborated in the Yasna, Visperad, and Vendidad. But the account of Mazdeism given by Plutarch shows that the work of coordination was already terminated at the end of the Achraemenian period, and there is no part of the Avesta which, so far as the matter is concerned, may not have been written in those times. Nay, the Greek accounts of that period present us, in some measure, with a later stage of thought, and are pervaded with a stronger sense of symmetry, than the Avesta itself. Such passages as the latter end of the ZamyAd Yast and VendIdAd X, 9 seq. prove that, when they were composed, the seven Arch-Devs were not yet pointedly contrasted with the seven Amshaspands, and therefore those passages might have been written long before the time of Philip. The theory of time and space as first principles of the world, of which only the germs are found in the Avesta, was fully developed in the time of Eudemos, a disciple of Aristotle. § 18. To what extent the Magian dogmatical conceptions were admitted by the whole of the Iranian population, or how and by what process they spread among it, we cannot ascertain for want of documentary evidence. As regards their observances we are better instructed, and can form an idea of how far and in what particulars they differed from the other Iranians. The new principle they introduced, or, rather, developed into new

consequences, was that of the purity of the elements. Fire, earth, and water had always been considered sacred things, and had received worship: the Magi drew from that principle the conclusion that burying the dead or burning the dead was defiling a god: as early as Herodotus they had already succeeded in preserving fire from that pollution, and cremation was a capital crime. The earth still continued to be defiled, notwithstanding the example they set; and it was only under the Sassanians, when Mazdeism became the religion of the state, that they won this point also. The religious difference between the Persians and their Medic priests was therefore chiefly in observances. Out of the principles upon which the popular religion rested, the sacerdotal class drew by dint of logic, in a puritan spirit, the necessity of strict observances, the yoke of which was not willingly endured by the mass of the people. Many acts, insignificant in the eyes of the people, became repugnant to their consciences and their more refined logic. The people resisted, and for a time Magian observances were observed only by the Magi. The slow triumph of Magism can be dimly traced through the Achaemenian period. Introduced by Cyrus, it reigned supreme for a time with the Pseudo-Smerdis, and was checked by Darius. It seems to have resumed its progress under Xerxes; at least, it was reported that it was to carry out Magian principles that he destroyed the Greek temples, and that the first who wrote on the Zoroastrian lore was a Magian, named Osthanes, who had accompanied him to Greece. New progress marked the reign of Artaxerxes Longimanus. The epic history of Iran, as preserved in the Shah Namah, passes suddenly from the field of mythology to that of history with the reign of that king, which makes it likely that it was in his time that the legends of Media became national in Persia, and that his reign was an epoch in the political history of Magism, But the real victory was not won till six centuries later, when national interest required a national religion. Then, as happens in every revolution, the ultra party, that had pushed to the extreme the principles common to all, took the lead; the Magi ascended the throne with Ardeshir, one of their pupils, and the Magian observances became the law of all Iran. But their triumph was not to be a long one; their principles required an effort too continuous and too severe to be ever made by any but priests, who might concentrate all their faculties in watching whether they had not dropped a hair upon the ground. A working people could not be imprisoned in such a religion, though it might be pure and high in its ethics. The triumph of Islam was a deliverance for the consciences of many, and Magism, by enforcing its observances upon the nation, brought about the ruin of its dogmas, which were swept away at the same time: its triumph was the cause and signal of its fall.

CHAPTER IV

THE ORIGIN OF THE AVESTA RELIGION

§ 1. What was the religion of the Magi which we find reflected in the Avesta? and whence did it arise? Magism, in its general form, may be summed up as follows- The world, such as it is now, is twofold, being the work of two hostile beings, Ahura Mazda, the good principle, and Angra Mainyu, the evil principle; all that is good in the world comes from the former, all that is bad in it comes from the latter. The history of the world is the history of their conflict, how Angra Mainyu invaded the world of Ahura Mazda and marred it, and how he shall be expelled from it at last. Man is active in the conflict, his duty in it being laid before him in the law revealed by Ahura Mazda to Zarathustra. When the appointed time has come, a son of the lawgiver, still unborn, named Saoshyant, will appear, Angra Mainyu and hell will be destroyed, men will rise from the dead, and everlasting happiness will reign over the world. We have tried in another book to

show that the religion of the Magi is derived from the same source as that of the Indian Rishis, that is, from the religion followed by the common forefathers of the Iranians and Indians, the Indo-Iranian religion. The Mazdean belief is, therefore, composed of two different strata; the one comprises all the gods, myths, and ideas which were already in existence during the Indo-Iranian period, whatever changes they may have undergone during the actual Iranian period; the other comprises the gods, myths, and ideas which were only developed after the separation of the two religions. § 2. There were two general ideas at the bottom of the Indo-Iranian religion; first, that there is a law in nature, and, secondly, that there is a war in nature. There is a law in nature because everything goes on in a serene and mighty order. Days after days, seasons after seasons, years after years come and come again; there is a marvelous friendship between the sun and the moon, the dawn has never missed its appointed time and place, and the stars that shine in the night know where to go when the day is breaking. There is a God who fixed that never-failing law, and on whom it rests forever. There is a war in nature, because it contains powers that work for good and powers that work for evil: there are such beings as benefit man, and such beings as injure him: there are gods and fiends. They struggle on, never and nowhere more apparent than in the storm, in which, under our very eyes, the fiend that carries off the light and streams of heaven fights with the god that gives them back to man and the thirsty earth. There were, therefore, in the Indo-Iranian religion a latent monotheism and an unconscious dualism; both of which, in the further development of Indian thought, slowly disappeared; but Mazdeism lost neither of these two notions, nor did it add a new one, and its original action was to cling strongly and equally to both ideas and push them to an extreme. § 3. The God that has established the laws in nature is the Heaven God. He is the greatest of gods, since there is nothing above him nor outside of him; he has made everything, since everything is produced or takes place in him; he is the wisest of all gods, since with his eyes, the sun, moon, and stars, he sees everything. This god was named either after his bodily nature Varana, 'the all-embracing sky,' or after his spiritual attributes Asura, 'the Lord,' Asura Yisvavedas, 'the all-knowing Lord,' Asura Mazdha, 'the Lord of high knowledge.' § 4. The supreme Asura of the Indo-Iranian religion, the Heaven god, is called in the Avesta Ahura Mazda, 'the all-knowing Lord;' his concrete name Varana, which became his usual name in India (Varuna), was lost in Iran, and remained only as the name of the material heaven, and then of a mythical region, the Varena, which was the seat of the mythical fight between a storm god and a storm fiend. § 5. The spiritual attributes of the Heaven god were daily more and more strongly defined, and his material attributes were thrown farther into the background. Yet many features, though ever dimmer and dimmer, betray his former bodily or, rather, his sky nature. He is white, bright, seen afar, and his body is the greatest and fairest of all bodies; he has the sun for his eye, the rivers above for his spouses, the fire of lightning for his son; he wears the heaven as a star-spangled garment, he puts on the hard stone of heaven, he is the hardest of all gods. He dwells in the infinite luminous space, and the infinite luminous space is his place, his body. In the time of Herodotus, Persians, while invoking Auramazda, the creator of earth and heaven, still knew who he was, and called the whole vault of the sky Zeus, that is to say, called it the supreme god. § 6. In the Indo-Iranian religion, the supreme Asura, although he was the supreme god, was not the only god. There were near him and within him many mighty beings, the sun, wind, lightning, thunder, rain, prayer, sacrifice, which as soon as they struck the eye or the fancy of man, were at once turned into gods. If the Heaven Asura, greater in time and space, eternal and universal, everlasting and ever present, was without effort raised to the supreme rank by his twofold infinitude, there were other gods, of shorter but mightier life, who maintained against him their right to independence. The progress of religious thought might as well have gone on to transfer power from him to any of these gods, as to make his authority unrivaled. The former was the case in India: in the middle of the Vedic period,

Indra, the dazzling god of storm, rose to supremacy in the Indian Pantheon, and outshines Varuna with the roar and splendor of his feats; but soon to give way to a new and mystic king, Prayer or Brahman. Not so did Mazdeism, which struggled on towards unity. The Lord slowly brought everything under his unquestioned supremacy, and the other gods became not only his subjects, but his creatures. This movement was completed as early as the fourth century B.C. Nowhere can it be more clearly traced than in the Amesha Spentas and Mithra. § 7. The Indo-Iranian Asura was often conceived as sevenfold: by the play of certain mythical formulae and the strength of certain mythical numbers, the ancestors of the Indo-Iranians had been led to speak of seven worlds, and the supreme god was often made sevenfold, as well as the worlds over which he ruled. The names and the several attributes of the seven gods had not been as yet defined, nor could they be then; after the separation of the two religions, these gods, named Aditya, 'the infinite ones,' in India, were by and by identified there with the sun, and their number was afterwards raised to twelve, to correspond to the twelve successive aspects of the sun. In Persia, the seven gods are known as Amesha Spentas, 'the undying and well-doing ones;' they by and by, according to the new spirit that breathed in the religion, received the names of the deified abstractions Vohu-manu (good thought), Asha Vahista (excellent holiness), Khshathra vairya (perfect sovereignty), Spenta Armaiti (divine piety), Haurvatat and Ameretat (health and immortality). The first of them all was and remained Ahura Mazda; but whereas formerly he had been only the first of them, he was now their father. 'I invoke the glory of the Amesha Spentas, who all seven have one and the same thinking, one and the same speaking, one and the same doing, one and the same father and lord, Ahura Mazda.' § 8. In the Indo-Iranian religion, the Asura of Heaven was often invoked in company with Mitra, the god of the heavenly light, and he let him share with himself the universal sovereignty. In the Veda, they are invoked as a pair (Mitra-Varuna), which enjoys the same power and rights as Varuna alone, as there is nothing more in Mitra-Varuna than in Varuna alone, Mitra being the light of Heaven, that is, the light of Varuna. But Ahura Mazda could no longer bear an equal, and Mithra became one of his creatures: 'This Mithra, the lord of wide pastures, I have created as worthy of sacrifice, as worthy of glorification, as I, Ahura Mazda, am myself.' But old formulae, no longer understood, in which Mithra and Ahura, or, rather, Mithra Ahura, are invoked in an indivisible unity, dimly remind one that the Creator was formerly a brother to his creature. § 9. Thus came a time when Ahura was not only the maker of the world, the creator of the earth, water, trees, mountains, roads, wind, sleep, and light, was not only he who gives to man life, shape, and food, but was also the father of Tistrya, the rain-bestowing god, of Verethraghna, the fiend-smiting god, and of Haoma, the tree of eternal life, the father of the six Amesha Spentas, the father of all gods. Yet, with all his might, he still needs the help of some god, of such as free the oppressed heavens from the grasp of the fiend. When storm rages in the atmosphere he offers, up a sacrifice to Vayu, the bright storm god, who moves in the wind, he entreats him: 'Grant me the favor, thou Vayu whose action is most high, that I may smite the world of Angra Mainyu, and that he may not smite mine I Vayu, whose action is most high, granted the asked-for favor to the creator Ahura Mazd: And when Zoroaster is born, Ahura entreats Ardivi Sura Anahita that the , new-born hero may stand by him in the fight (see § 40). § 10. Whereas in India the fiends were daily driven farther and farther into the background, and by the prevalence of the metaphysical spirit gods and fiends came to be nothing more than changing and fleeting creatures of the everlasting, indifferent Being, Persia took her demons in real earnest; she feared them, she hated them, and the vague and unconscious dualism that lay at the bottom of the Indo-Iranian religion has its unsteady outlines sharply defined, and became the very form and frame of Mazdeism. The conflict was no more seen and heard in the passing storm only, but it raged through all the avenues of space and time. The Evil became a power of itself, engaged in an open and never-ceasing warfare with the Good. The Good was centered in the

supreme god, in Ahura Mazda, the bright god of Heaven, the all-knowing Lord, the Maker, who, as the author of every good thing, was 'the good Spirit,' Spenta Mainyu. In front of him and opposed to him slowly rose the evil Spirit, Angra Mainyu. We will briefly explain what became, in Mazdeism, of the several elements of the Indo-Iranian dualism, and then we will show how the whole system took a regular form.

§ 11. The war in nature was waged in the storm. The Vedas describe it as a battle fought by a god, Indra, armed with the lightning and thunder, against a serpent, Ahi, who has carried off the dawns or the rivers, described as goddesses or as milch cows, and who keeps them captive in the folds of the cloud. This myth appears in a still simpler form in the Avesta: it is a fight for the possession of the light of hvareno between Atar and Azi DahAka. A tar means 'fire; ' he is both a thing and a person. He is sometimes described as the weapon of Ahura, but usually as his son, as the fire that springs from heaven can be conceived either as flung by it, or as born of it. Azi DahAka, 'the fiendish snake,' is a three-headed dragon, who strives to seize and put out the hvareno: he takes hold of it, but Atar frightens him away and recovers the light. The scene of the fight is the sea Vouru-kasha, a sea from which all the waters on the earth fall down with the winds and the clouds; in other words, they fight in the sea above, in the atmospheric field of battle. § 12. The same myth in the Vedas was described as a feat of Traitana or Trita Aptya, 'Trita, the son of waters,' who killed the three-headed, six-eyed fiend, and let loose the cows. 'The son of waters' is both in the Vedas and in the Avesta a name of the fire-god, as born from the cloud, in the lightning. The same tale is told in the same terms in the Avesta: Thraetaona Athwya killed Azi Dahaka (the fiendish snake), the three-mouthed, three-headed, six-eyed, ... the most dreadful Drug created by Angra Mainyu. The scene of the battle is 'the four cornered Varena,' which afterwards became a country on the earth, when Thraetaona himself and Azi became earthly kings, but which was formerly nothing less than 'the four pointed Varuna,' that is, 'the four-sided Ovpavos,' the Heavens. § 13. The fight for the waters was described in a myth of later growth, a sort of refacimento, the myth of Tistrya and Apaosha. Apaosha keeps away the rain: Tistrya, worsted at first, then strengthened by a sacrifice which has been offered to him by Mazda, knocks down Apaosha with his club, the fire Vazista, and the waters stream freely down the seven Karshvare, led by the winds, by the son of the waters, and by the light that dwells in the waters. § 14. The god that conquers light is chiefly praised in the Vedas under the name of Indra Vritrahan, 'Indra the fiend-smiter.' His Iranian brother is named Verethraghna, which became by and by the genius of Victory (Bahram). Yet although he assumed a more abstract character than Indra, he retained the mythical features of the storm god, and his original nature was so little forgotten that he was worshipped on earth as a fire, the Bahram fire, which was believed to be an emanation from the fire above, and the most powerful protector of the land against foes and fiends. § 15. In the Indo-Iranian mythology, Vayu was the word for both the atmosphere and the bright god who fights and conquers in it. As a god, Vayu became in Mazdeism Vayu, a god conqueror of light, a smiter of the fiends, all made of light, who moves in a golden car, with sonorous rings,' Ahura Mazda invokes him for help against Angra Mainyu. § 16. Another name of Vayu is Rama hvastra: this word meant originally 'the god of the resting-place with good pastures,' the clouds in the atmosphere being often viewed as a herd of cows, and the Indian Vayu as a good shepherd. Hence came the connection of Rama hvastra with Mithra, 'the lord of the wide pastures.' In later times, chiefly owing to a mistake in language hvastra being thought to be related to the root hvarez, 'to taste'), Rama hvastra became the god who gives a good flavour to aliments. § 17. Considered as a thing, as the atmosphere, Vayu is the place where the god and the fiend meet: there is therefore a part of it which belongs to the good and another part which belongs to the evil. Hence came the later notion that between Ormazd and Ahriman there is a void space, Vai, in which their meeting takes place. Hence came also the distinction of two Vai, the good one and the bad one, which, probably by the natural connection of Vayu, the

atmosphere, with the heavens whose movement is Destiny, became, at last, the good Fate and the bad Fate, or Destiny bringing good and evil, life and death. § 18. Azi is not always vanquished; he may also conquer; and it is just because the serpent has seized upon the sky and darkened the light, that the battle breaks out. Azi has carried off the sovereign light, the hvareno, from Yima Khshaeta, 'the shining Yima' In the course of time Thraetaona, Yima, and Azi Dahaka became historical: it was told how King Jemshid (Yima Khshaeta) had been overthrown and killed by the usurper Zohak (Dahaka), a man with two snakes' heads upon his shoulders, and how Zohak himself had been overthrown by a prince of the royal blood, Feridun (Thraetaona). Yet Zohak, though vanquished, could not be killed; he was bound to Mount Damavand, there to lie in bonds till the end of the world, when he shall be let loose, and then killed by Keresaspa. The fiend is as long-lived as the world, since as often as he is vanquished he appears again, as dark and fearful as ever. § 19. While the serpent passed thus from mythology into legend, he still continued under another name, or, more correctly, under another form of his name, azi, a word which the Parsis converted into a pallid and lifeless abstraction by identifying it with a similar word from the same root, meaning ' want.' But that he was the very same being as Azi, the snake, appears from his adversaries: like Azi, he fights against Atar, the fire, and strives to extinguish it, and together with the Pairikas, he wants to carry off the rain-floods, like the Indian Ahi. § 20. Mazdeism, as might be expected from its main principle, is very rich in demons. There are whole classes of them which belong to the Indo-Iranian mythology. The Vedic Yatus are found unaltered in the Avesta. The Yatu in the Vedas is the demon taking any form he pleases, the fiend as a wizard: so he is in the Avesta also, where the name is likewise extended to the Yatu-man, the sorcerer. § 21. With the Yatus are often associated the Pairikas (the Paris). The Pairika corresponds in her origin {and perhaps as to her name) to the Indian Apsaras. The light for which the storm god struggled was often compared, as is well known, to a fair maid or bride carried off by the fiend. There was a class of myths, in which, instead of being carried off, she was supposed to have given herself up, of her own free will, to the demon, and to have betrayed the god, her lover. In another form of myth, still more distant from the naturalistic origin, the Pairikas were ' nymphs of a fair, but erring line,' who seduced the heroes to lead them to their ruin. Afterwards the Pari became at length the seduction of idolatry. In their oldest Avesta form they are still demoniac nymphs, who rob the gods and men of the heavenly waters: they hover between heaven and earth, in the midst of the sea Vouru-kasha, to keep off the rain-floods, and they work together with Azi and Apaosha. Then we see the Pairika, under the name of Knathaiti, cleave to KeresAspa. KeresAspa, like Thraetaona, is a great smiter of demons, who killed the snake Svara, a twin brother of Ari Dahaka. It was related in later tales that he was born immortal, but that having despised the holy religion he was killed, during his sleep, by a Turk, Niyaz ', which, being translated into old myth, would mean that he gave himself up to the Pairika Khnathaiti, who delivered him asleep to the fiend. Yet he must rise from his sleep, at the end of time, to kill Azi, and Khnithaiti will be killed at the same time by Saoshyant¹, the son of Zarathwtra, which shows her to be a genuine sister of Azi. § 22. Then come the host of storm fiends, the Drvants, the Dvarants, the Dregvants, all names meaning ' the running ones,' and referring to the headlong course of the fiends in storm,' the onsets of the wounding crew.' One of the foremost amongst the Drvants, their leader in their onsets, is Aeshma, ' the raving,' ' a fiend with the wounding spear.' Originally a mere epithet of the storm fiend, Aeshma was afterwards converted into an abstract, the demon of rage and anger, and became an expression for all moral wickedness, a mere name of Ahriman. § 23. A class of demons particularly interesting are the Varenya daevas. The phrase, an old one belonging to the Inda-European mythology, meant originally ' the gods in heaven,' Οὐράνιοι θεοί; when the daevas were converted into demons (see § 41), they became 'the fiends in the heavens,' the fiends who assail the sky; and later on, as the meaning

of the word Varena was lost, 'the fiends of the Varena land;' and finally, nowadays, as their relation to Varena is lost to sight, they are turned by popular etymology, now into demons of lust, and now into demons of doubt. § 24 To the Pairika is closely related to Bushyasta the yellow, the long-handed. She lulls back to sleep the world as soon as awaked, and makes the faithful forget in slumber the hour of prayer. But as at the same time she is said to have fallen upon Keresaspa, one sees that she belonged before to a more concrete sort of mythology, and was a sister to Khnathaiti and to the Pairikas. § 25. A member of the same family is Gahi, who was originally the god's bride giving herself up to the demon, and became then, by the progress of abstraction, the demon of unlawful love and unchastity. The courtesan is her incarnation, as the sorcerer is that of the Yatu. § 26. Death gave rise to several personations. Sauru, which in our texts is only the proper name of a demon, was probably identical in meaning, as he is in name, with the Vedic Saru, 'the arrow,' a personification of the arrow of death as a godlike being. The same idea seems to be conveyed by Ishus hvathakhto, 'the self-moving arrow,' a designation to be accounted for by the fact that Saru, in India, before becoming the arrow of death, was the arrow of lightning with which the god killed his foe. A more abstract personification is Ithyego marshaonem, 'the unseen death,' death which creeps unawares. Asto vitdotus, 'the bone-divider,' who, like the Yama of the Sanskrit epic, holds a noose around the neck of all living creatures. § 27. In the conflict between gods and fiends man is active: he takes a part in it through the sacrifice. The sacrifice is more than an act of worship, it is an act of assistance to the gods. Gods, like men, need drink and food to be strong; like men, they need praise and encouragement to be of good cheer. When not strengthened by the sacrifice, they fly helpless before their foes. Tistrya, worsted by Apaosha, cries to Ahura: 'O Ahura Mazda! men do not worship me with sacrifice and praise: should they worship me with sacrifice and praise, they would bring me the strength of ten horses, ten bulls, ten mountains, ten rivers.' Ahura offers him a sacrifice, he brings him thereby the strength of ten horses, ten bulls, ten mountains, ten rivers, Tistrya runs back to the battlefield and Apaosha flies before him. § 28. The sacrifice is composed of two elements, offerings and spells. The offerings are libations of holy water (zaothra), holy meat (myazda), and Haoma. The last offering is the most sacred and powerful of all. Haoma, the Indian Soma, is an intoxicating plant, the juice of which is drunk by the faithful for their own benefit and for the benefit of their gods. It comprises in it the powers of life of all the vegetable kingdom. There are two Haomas: one is the yellow or golden Haoma, which is the earthly Haoma, and which, when prepared for the sacrifice, is the king of healing plants; the other is the white Haoma or Gaokerena, which grows up in the middle of the sea Vouru-kasha, surrounded by the ten thousand healing plants. It is by the drinking of Gaokerena that men, on the day of the resurrection, will become immortal. § 29. Spell or prayer is not less powerful than the offerings. In the beginning of the world, it was by reciting the Honover (Ahuna Vairya) that Ormazd confounded Ahriman. Man, too, sends his prayer between the earth and the heavens, there to smite the fiends, the Kakvaredhas and the Kakvaredhis, the Kayadhas and the Kayadhis, the Zandas and the Yatus. § 30. A number of divinities sprang from the hearth of the altar, most of which were already in existence during the Indo-Iranian period. Piety, which every day brings offerings and prayers to the fire of the altar, was worshipped in the Vedas as Aramati, the goddess who every day, morning and evening streaming with the sacred butter, goes and gives up herself to Agni. She was praised in the Avesta in a more sober manner as the abstract genius of piety; yet a few practices preserved evident traces of old myths on her union with Atar, the fire god. Agni, as a messenger between gods and men, was known to the Vedas as Nara-sangha; hence came the Avesta messenger of Ahura, Nairyō-sangha. The riches that go up from earth to heaven in the offerings of man and come down from heaven to earth in the gifts of the gods were deified as Rita', the gift, Ashi, the felicity, and more vividly in Parendi, the keeper of treasures, who comes on a sounding chariot, a sister to

the Vedic Puramdhi. The order of the world, the Vedic Rita, the Zend Asha, was deified as Asha Vahista, 'the excellent Asha.' § 31, Sraosha is the priest god: he first tied the Baresma into bundles, and offered up sacrifice to Ahura; he first sang the holy hymns: his weapons are the Ahuna-Vairya and the Yasna, and thrice in each day, in each night, he descends upon this Karshvare to smite Angra Mainyu and his crew of demons. It is he who, with his club uplifted, protects the living world from the terrors of the night, when the fiends rush upon the earth; it is he who protects the dead from the terrors of death, from the assaults of Angra Mainyu and Vidotus. It is through a sacrifice performed by Ormazd, as a Zoti, and Sraosha, as a Raspi, that at the end of time Ahriman will be forever vanquished and brought to nought. § 32. Thus far, the single elements of Mazdeism do not essentially differ from those of the Vedic and Indo-European mythologies generally. Yet Mazdeism as a whole, took an aspect of its own by grouping these elements in a new order, since by referring everything either to Ahura Mazda or Angra Mainyu as its source, it came to divide the world into two symmetrical halves, in both of which a strong unity prevailed. The change was summed up in the rising of Angra Mainyu, a being of mixed nature, who was produced by abstract speculation from the old Indo-European storm fiend, and who borrowed this form from the supreme god himself. On the one hand, as the world battle is only an enlarged form of the mythical storm fight, Angra Mainyu, the fiend of fiends and the leader of the evil powers, is partly an abstract embodiment of their energies and feats; on the other hand, as the antagonist of Ahura, he is modeled after him, and is partly, as it were, a negative projection of Ahura. Ahura is all light, truth, goodness, and knowledge; Angra Mainyu is all darkness, falsehood, wickedness, and ignorance. Ahura dwells in the infinite light; Angra Mainyu dwells in the infinite night. Whatever the good Spirit makes, the evil Spirit mars. When the world was created, Angra Mainyu broke into it, opposed every creation of Ahura's with a plague of his own killed the first-born bull that had been the first offspring and source of life on earth, he mixed poison with plants, smoke with fire, sin with man, and death with life. § 33, Under Ahura were ranged the six Amesha Spentas. They were at first mere personifications of virtues and moral or liturgical powers; but as their lord and father ruled over the whole of the world, they took by and by each a part of the world under their care. The choice was not altogether artificial, but partly natural and spontaneous. The empire of waters and trees was vested in Haurvatat and Ameretat, health and immortality, through the influence of old Indo-Iranian formulae, in which waters and trees were invoked as the springs of health and life. More complex trains of ideas and partly the influence of analogy fixed the field of action of the others. Khshathra Vairya, the perfect sovereignty, had molten brass for its emblem, as the god in the storm established his empire by means of that 'molten brass,' the fire of lightning; he thus became the king of metals in general. Asha Vahista, the holy order of the world, as maintained chiefly by the sacrificial fire, became the genius of fire. Armaiti seems to have become a goddess of the earth as early as the Indo-Iranian period, and Vohumano had the living creation left to his superintendence. § 34. The Amesha Spentas projected, as it were, out of themselves, as many Daevas or demons, who, either in their being or functions, were, most of them, hardly more than dim inverted images of the very gods they were to oppose, and whom they followed through all their successive evolutions. Haurvatit and Ameretat, health and life, were opposed by Tauru and Zairi, sickness and decay, who changed into rulers of thirst and hunger when Haurvatat and Ameretat had become the Amshaspands of waters and trees. Vohu-mano, or good thought, was reflected in Akomano, evil thought. Sauro, the arrow of death, Indra, a name or epithet of fire as destructive, Naunhaithya, an old Indo-Iranian divinity whose meaning was forgotten in Iran and misinterpreted by popular etymology, were opposed, respectively, to Khshathra Vairya, Asha Vahista, and Spenta Armaiti, and became the demons of tyranny, corruption, and impiety. Then came the symmetrical armies of the numberless gods and fiends, Yazatas and Drvants. § 35. Everything in the world was engaged in the

conflict. Whatever works, or is fancied to work, for the good of man or for his harm, for the wider spread of life or against it, comes from, and strives for, either Ahura or Angra Mainyu. Animals are enlisted under the standards of either the one spirit or the other. In the eyes of the Parsis, they belong either to Ormazd or Ahriman according as they are useful or hurtful to man; but, in fact, they belonged originally to either the one or the other, according as they had been incarnations of the god or of the fiend, that is, as they chanced to have lent their forms to either in the storm tales. In a few cases, of course, the habits of the animal had not been without influence upon its mythic destiny: but the determinative cause was different. The fiend was not described as a serpent because the serpent is a subtle and crafty reptile, but because the storm fiend envelops the goddess of light, or the milch cows of the raining heavens, with the coils of the cloud as with a snake's folds. It was not animal psychology that disguised gods and fiends as dogs, otters, hedge-hogs, and cocks, or as snakes, tortoises, frogs, and ants, but the accidents of physical qualities and the caprice of popular fancy, as both the god and the fiend might be compared with, and transformed into, any object, the idea of which was suggested by the uproar of the storm, the blazing of the lightning, the streaming of the water, or the hue and shape of the clouds. Killing the Ahrimanic creatures, the Khrafstras, is killing Ahriman himself, and sin may be atoned for by this means. Killing an Ormazdean animal is an abomination, it is killing God himself. Persia was on the brink of zoolatry, and escaped it only by misunderstanding the principle she followed. § 36. The fulgurating conqueror of Apaosha, Tistrya, was described in mythic tales sometimes as a boar with golden horns, sometimes as a horse with yellow ears, sometimes as a beautiful youth. But as he had been compared to a shining star on account of the gleaming of lightning, the stars joined in the fray, where they stood with Tistrya on Ahura's side; and partly for the sake of symmetry, partly owing to Chaldaean influences, the planets passed into the army of Ahriman. § 37. Man, according to his deeds, belongs to Ormazd or to Ahriman. He belongs to Ormazd, he is a man of Asha, a holy one, if he offers sacrifice to Ormazd and the gods, if he helps them by good thoughts, words, and deeds, if he enlarges the world of Ormazd by spreading life over the world, and if he makes the realm of Ahriman narrower by destroying his creatures. A man of Asha is the Athravan (priest) who drives away fiends and diseases by spells, the Rathaesta (warrior) who with his club crushes the head of the impious, the Vastryo (husbandman) who makes good and plentiful harvests grow up out of the earth. He who does the contrary is a Drvant, 'demon,' an Anashavan, 'foe of Asha,' an Ashemaogha, 'confounder of Asha.' The man of Asha who has lived for Ahura Mazda will have a seat near -him in heaven, in the same way as in India the man of Rita, the faithful one, goes to the palace of Varona, there to live with the forefathers, the Pitris, a life of everlasting happiness. Thence he will go out, at the end of time, when the dead shall rise, and live a new and all-happy life on the earth freed from evil and death. §. 38. This brings us to speak of a series of myths which have done much towards obscuring the close connection between the Avesta and the Vedic mythologies: I mean the myths about the heavenly life of Yima. In the Veda Yama, the son of Vivasvat, is the first man and, therefore, the first of the dead, the king of the dead. As such he is the center of gathering for the departed, and he presides over them in heaven, in the Yamasadanam, as king of men, near Varuna the king of gods. His Avesta twin-brother, Yima, the son of Vivanghat, is no longer the first man, as this character had been transferred to another hero, of later growth, Gayo Maratan; yet, he has kept nearly all the attributes which were derived from his former character: on the one hand he is the first king, and the founder of civilisation; on the other hand, 'the best mortals' gather around him in a marvelous palace, in Airyanem Vaego, which appears to be identical with the Yamasidanam from Yama meeting there with Ahura and the gods, and making his people live there a blessed life. But, by and by, as it was forgotten that Yima was the first man and the first of the dead, it was also forgotten that his people were nothing else than the dead going to their common ancestor above

and to the king of heaven: the people in the Vara were no longer recognized as the human race, but became a race of a supernatural character, different from those who continued going, day by day, from earth to heaven to join Ahura Mazda. § 39. But the life of the world is limited, the struggle is not to last forever, and Ahriman will be defeated at last. The world was imagined as lasting a long year of twelve millenniums. There had been an old myth, connected with that notion, which made the world end in a frightful winter, to be succeeded by an eternal spring, when the blessed would come down from the Vara of Yima to repeople the earth. But as storm was the ordinary and more dramatic form of the strife, there was another version, according to which the world ended in a storm, and this version became the definitive one. The serpent, Ari Dahaka, let loose, takes hold of the world again. As the temporary disappearance of the light was often mythically described either as the sleeping of the god, or as his absence, or death, its reappearance was indicative of the awakening of the hero, or his return, or the arrival of a son born to him. Hence came the tales about Keresaspa awakening from his sleep to kill the snake finally; the tales about Peshotanu, Aghraeratha, Khumbya, and others living in remote countries till the day of the last fight has come; and, lastly, the tales about Saoshyant, the son who is to be born to Zarathustra at the end of time, and to bring eternal light and life to mankind, as his father brought them the law and the truth. This brings us to the question of whether any historical reality underlies the legend of Zarathustra or Zoroaster. § 40. Mazdeism has often been called Zoroaster's religion in the same sense as Islam is called Muhammed's religion, that is, as being the work of a man named Zoroaster, a view which was favored, not only by the Parsi and Greek accounts, but by the strong unity and symmetry of the whole system. Moreover, as the moral and abstract spirit which pervades Mazdeism is different from the Vedic spirit, and as the word deva, which means a god in Sanskrit, means a demon in the Avesta, it was thought that Zoroaster's work had been a work of reaction against Indian polytheism, in fact, a religious schism. When he lived no one knows, and every one agrees that all that the Parsis and the Greeks tell of him is mere legend, through which no solid historical facts can be arrived at. The question is whether Zoroaster was a man converted into a god, or a god converted into a man. No one who reads, with a mind free from the yoke of classical recollections, I do not say the Book of Zoroaster (which may be charged with being a modern romance of recent invention), but the Avesta itself, will have any doubt that Zoroaster is no less an essential part of the Mazdean mythology than the son expected to be born to him, at the end of time, to destroy Ahriman. Zoroaster is not described as one who brings new truth and drives away error, but as one who overthrows the demons: he is a smiter of fiends, like Verethraghna, Apam Napat, Tistrya, Vayu, or Keresaspa, and he is stronger and more valiant than Keresaspa himself; the difference between him and them is that, whereas they smite the fiend with material weapons, he smites them chiefly with a spiritual one, the word or prayer. We say 'chiefly' because the holy word is not his only weapon; he repels the assaults of Ahriman with stones as big as a house which Ahura has given to him, and which were furnished, no doubt, from the same quarry as the stones which are cast at their enemies by Indra, by Agni, by the Maruts, or by Thor, and which are 'the flame, wherewith, as with a stone,' the storm god aims at the fiend. Therefore his birth, like the birth of every storm god, is longed for and hailed with joy as the signal of its deliverance by the whole living creation, because it is the end of the dark and arid reign of the demon: In his birth, in his growth did the floods and trees rejoice; in his birth, in his growth the floods and trees did grow up; in his birth, in his growth the floods and trees exclaimed with joy.' Ahura himself longs for him and fears lest the hero about to be born may not stand by him: 'He offered up a sacrifice to Ardivi Sura Anahita, he, the Maker, Ahura Mazda; he offered up the Haoma, the Myazda, the Baresma the holy words, he besought her, saying: Vouchsafe me that boon, O high, mighty, undefiled goddess, that I may bring about the son of Pourushaspa, the holy Zarathustra, to think according to the law, to speak

according to the law, to work according to the law I' Ardvi Sura. Anahita granted that boon to him who was offering up libations, sacrificing and beseeching. Zarathustra stands by Ahura. The fiends come rushing along from hell to kill him, and fly away terrified by his hvareno: Angra Mainyu himself is driven away by the stones he hurls at him. But the great weapon of Zarathustra is neither the thunder-stones he hurls, nor the glory with which he is surrounded, it is the Word. In the voice of the thunder the Greeks recognized the warning of a god which the wise understand, and they worshipped it as Οσσα Διός άγγελος, 'the Word, messenger of Zeus;' the Romans worshipped it as a goddess, Fama; India adores it as 'the Voice in the cloud,' Vak Ambhrini, which issues from the waters, from the forehead of the father, and hurls the deadly arrow against the foe of Brahman. So the word from above is either a weapon 'that kills, or a revelation that teaches: in the mouth of Zarathustra it is both: now 'he smites down Angra Mainyu with the Ahuna vairya (Honover) as he would do with stones as big as a house, and he burns him up with the Ashem vohu as with melted brass;' now he converses with Ahura, on the mountain of the holy questions, in the forest of the holy questions. Any storm god, whose voice descends from above to the earth, may become a godlike messenger, a lawgiver, a Zarathustra. Nor is Zarathustra the only lawgiver, the only prophet, of whom the Avesta knows: Gayo Maratan, Yima, the bird Karsiptan, each of whom, under different names, forms, and functions, are one and the same being with Zarathustra, that is to say, the godlike champion in the struggle for light, knew the law as well as Zarathustra. But as mythology, like language and life, likes to reduce every organ to one function, Zarathustra became the titular lawgiver. As he overwhelmed Angra Mainyu during his lifetime by his spell, he is to overwhelm him at the end of time by the hands of a son yet unborn. 'Three times he came near unto his wife Hrogvi, and three times the seed fell upon the ground. The Ized Neriosengh took what was bright and strong in it and entrusted it to the Ized Anihita. At the appointed time, it will be united again with a maternal womb: 99,999 Fravashis of the faithful watch over it, lest the fiends destroy it.' A maid bathing in the lake Kasava will conceive by it and bring forth the victorious Saoshyant (Soshyos), who will come from the region of the dawn to free the world from death and decay, from corruption and rottenness, ever-living and ever thriving, when the dead shall rise and immortality commence. All the features in Zarathustra point to a god: that the god may have grown up from a man, that pre-existent mythic elements may have gathered around the name of a man, born on earth, and by and by surrounded the human face with the aureole of a god, may, of course, be maintained, but only on condition that one may distinctly express what was the real work of Zoroaster. That he raised a new religion against the Vedic religion, and cast down into hell the gods of older days can no longer be maintained, since the gods, the ideas, and the worship of Mazdeism are shown to emanate directly from the old religion, and have nothing more of a reaction against it than Zend has against Sanskrit. § 41. The only evidence in favor of the old hypothesis of a religious schism is reduced to the evidence of a few words which might a priori be challenged, as the life of words is not the same as the life of the things they express, the nature of things does not change with the meaning of the syllables which were attached to them for a while, and the history of the world is not a chapter of grammar. And, in fact, the evidence appealed' to, when more closely considered, proves to speak against the very theory it is meant to support. The word Asura, which in the Avesta means 'the Lord,' and is the name of the supreme God, means 'a demon' in the Brahmanical literature; but in the older religion of the Vedas it is quite as august as in the Avesta, and is applied to the highest deities, and particularly to Varona, the Indian brother of Ahura. This shows that when the Iranians and Indians sallied forth from their common native land, the Asura continued for a long time to be the Lord in India as well as in Persia; and the change took place, not in Iran, but in India. The descent of the word daeva from 'a god' to 'a demon' is a mere accident of language. There were in the Indo-Iranian language three words expressive of divinity: Asura, 'the Lord,'

Yagata,' the one who is worthy of sacrifice,' Daeva, 'the shining one.' Asura became the name of the supreme God, Yagata was the general name of all gods. Now as there were old Indo-Iranian formulae which deprecated the wrath of both men and devas (gods), or invoked the aid of some god against the hate and oppression of both men and devas, that word daeva, which had become obsolete (because Asura and Yagata met all the wants of religious language), took by and by from formulae of this kind a dark and fiendish meaning. What favored the change was the want of a technical word for expressing the general notion of a fiend, a want the more felt as the dualistic idea acquired greater strength and distinctness. Etymology was unable to preserve the Daevas from this degradation, as the root div, 'to shine,' was lost in Zend, and thus the primitive meaning being forgotten, the word was ready to take any new meaning which chance or necessity should give to it. But only the word descended into hell, not the beings it denoted; neither Varona, nor Mitra, nor the Adityas, nor Agni, nor Soma, in fact none of the old Aryan deities fell or tottered. Though the word Indra is the name of a fiend in the Avesta, the Vedic god it denotes was as bright and as mighty in Iran as in India under the name of Verethraghna: and as we do not know the etymological meaning of the name, it may have been such epithet as could be applied to a fiend as well as to a god. The same can be said of Naunghaithya. Moreover, both Indra and Naunghaithya are in the Avesta mere names: neither the Avesta nor old tradition knows anything about them, which would look very strange, had they been vanquished in a religious struggle, as they should have played the foremost part at the head of the fiends. As to the third comparison established between the Iranian demon Sauru and the Indian god Sarva, it fails utterly, as Sauru is the Vedic Saru, a symbol of death, and both are therefore beings of the same nature. § 42. Therefore, so far as the Vedic religion and the Avesta religion are concerned, there is not the abyss of a schism between them. They are quite different, and must be so, since each of them lived its own life, and living is changing; but nowhere is the link broken that binds both to their common source. Nowhere in the Avesta is the effort of any man felt who, standing against the belief of his people, enforces upon them a new creed, by the ascendancy of his genius, and turns the stream of their thoughts from the bed wherein it had flowed for centuries. There was no religious revolution: there was only a long and slow movement which led, by insensible degrees, the vague and unconscious dualism of the Indo-Iranian religion onwards to the sharply defined dualism of the Magi. It does not follow hence, of course, that there was nothing left to individual genius in the formation of Mazdeism; the contrary is evident a priori from the fact that Mazdeism expresses the ideas of a sacerdotal caste. It sprang from the long elaboration of successive generations of priests, and that elaboration is so far from having been the work of one day and of one man that the exact symmetry which is the chief characteristic of Mazdeism is still imperfect in the Avesta on certain most important points. For instance, the opposition of six arch-fiends to the six arch-gods which we find in Plutarch and in the Bundahis was still unknown when the Xth Fargard of the Vendidad and the XIXth Yast were composed, and the stars were not yet members of the Ormazdean army when the bulk of the VIIIth Yast was written. The reflective spirit that had given rise to Mazdeism never rested, but continued to produce new systems; there is hardly any religion in which slow growth and continual change is more apparent. When the Magi had accounted for the existence of evil by the existence of two principles, there arose the question how there could be two principles, and a longing for unity was felt, which found its satisfaction in the assumption that both are derived from one and the same principle. This principle was, according to divers sects, either Space, or Infinite Light, or Boundless Time, or Fate. Of most of these systems no direct trace is found in the Avesta, yet they existed already in the time of Aristotle. They came at last to pure monotheism. Some forty years ago when the Rev. Dr. Wilson was engaged in his controversy with the Parsis, some of his opponents repelled the charge of dualism by denying to Ahriman any real existence, and making him a

symbolical personification of bad instincts in man. It was not difficult for the Doctor to show that they were at variance with their sacred books, and critics in Europe occasionally wondered at the progress made by the Parsis in rationalism of the school of Voltaire and Gibbon. Yet there was no European influence at the bottom; and long before the Parsis had heard of Europe and Christianity, commentators, explaining the myth of Tahmurath, who rode for thirty years on Ahriman as a horse, interpreted the feat of the old legendary king as the curbing of evil passion and restraining the Ahriman in the heart of man. That idealistic interpretation was current as early as the fifteenth century, and is prevalent now with most of the Dasturs. To what extent that alteration may have been influenced by Islamism, can hardly be decided; there are even some faint signs that it began at a time when the old religion was still flourishing; at any rate, no one can think of ascribing to one man, or to one time, that slow change from dualism to monotheism, which is, however, really deeper and wider than the movement which, in pre-historic times, brought the Magi from an imperfect form of dualism to one more perfect.

CHAPTER V

THE VENDIDAD

§ 1. According to Parsi tradition the Vendidad is the only Nosk, out of the twenty-one, that was preserved in its entirety. This is a statement to which it is difficult to trust; for, if there is anything that shows how right the Parsis are in admitting that the Avesta is only a collection of fragments, it is just the fragmentary character of the Vendidad. The Vendidad has often been described as the book of the laws of the Parsis; it may be more exactly called the code of purification, a description, however, which is itself only so far correct that the laws of purification are the object of the largest part of the book. The first two chapters deal with mythical matter, without any direct connection with the general object of the Vendidad, and are remnants of an old epic and cosmogonic literature. The first deals with the creations and counter-creations of Ahura Mazda and Angra Mainyu; the second speaks of Yima, the founder of civilization. Although there was no particular reason for placing them in the Vendidad, as soon as they were admitted into it they were put at the beginning, because they referred to the first ages of the world. Three chapters of a mythical character, about the origin of medicine, were put at the end of the book, for want of any better place, but might as well have been kept apart, as was the so-called Hadhokht Nosk fragment. There is also another mythical Fargard, the nineteenth, which, as it treats of the revelation of the law by Ahura to Zarathustra, would have been more suitably placed at the beginning of the Vendidad proper, that is, as the third Fargard. The other seventeen chapters deal chiefly with religious observances, although mythical fragments, or moral digressions, are met with here and there, which are more or less artificially connected with the text, and which were most probably not written along with the passages which they follow. § 2. A rough attempt at regular order appears in these seventeen chapters: nearly all the matter contained in the eight chapters from V to XII deals chiefly with impurity from the dead and the way of dispelling it; but the subject is again treated, here and there, in other Fargards, and matter irrelevant to the subject has also found its way into these same eight Fargards. Fargards XIII and XIV are devoted to the dog, but must be completed with a part of the XVth. Fargards XVI, XVII, and most part of XVIII deal with several sorts of uncleanness, and their proper place should rather have been after the XIIth Fargard. Fargard III is devoted to the earth; Fargard IV stands by itself, as it deals with a matter which is treated only there, namely, civil and penal laws. No better order prevails within these several parts: prescriptions on one and the same

subject are scattered about through several Fargards, without any subject being treated at once in a full and exhaustive way; and this occasions needless repetitions. The main cause of this disorder was, of course, that the advantage of order is rarely felt by Orientals; but it was further promoted by the very form of exposition adopted by the first composers of the Vendidad. The law is revealed by Ahura in a series of answers to questions put to him by Zarathustra; and as these questions are not of a general character, but refer to details, the matter is much broken into fragments, each of which, consisting of a question with its answer, stands by itself, as an independent passage. We shall treat in the following pages, first of the laws of purification, then of the civil laws, and, lastly, of the penalties both religious and civil.

A.

§ 3. The first object of man is purity, yaozdau: 'purity is for man, next to life, the greatest good.' Purity and impurity have not in the Vendidad the exclusively spiritual meaning which they have in our languages: they do not refer to an inward state of the person, but chiefly to a physical state of the body. Impurity or uncleanness may be described as the state of a person or thing that is possessed of the demon; and the object of purification is to expel the demon. The principal means by which uncleanness enters man is death, as death is the triumph of the demon. When a man dies, as soon as the soul has parted from the body, the Drug Nasu or Corpse-Drug falls upon the dead from the regions of hell, and whoever thenceforth touches the corpse becomes unclean, and makes unclean whomsoever he touches. The Drug is expelled from the dead by means of the Sag-did, 'the look of the dog: ' a four-eyed dog ' or ' a white one with yellow ears' is brought near the body and is made to look at the dead; as soon as he has done so, the Drug flees back to hell. The Drug is expelled from the living, whom she has seized through their contact with the dead, by a process of washings with ox's urine (gomez or nirang) and with water, combined with the Sag-did. The real import of these ceremonies is shown by the spells which accompany their performance: ' Perish, O fiendish Drug I Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend I Perish away, O Drug I Rush away, O Drug! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit! ' Thus, in the death of a man, there is more involved than the death of one man: the power of death, called forth from hell, threatens from the corpse, as from a stronghold, the whole world of the living, ready to seize whatever may fall within his reach, and ' from the dead defiles the living, from the living rushes upon the living.' When a man dies in a house, there is danger for three days lest somebody else should die in that house. The notion or feeling, out of which these ceremonies grew, was far from unknown to the other Indo-European peoples: what was peculiar to Mazdeism was that it carried it to an extreme, and preserved a clearer sense of it, while elsewhere it grew dimmer and dimmer, and faded away. In fact, when the Greek, going out of a house where a dead man lay, sprinkled himself with water from the ἀπόαιου at the door, it was death that he drove away from himself. The Vedic Indian, too, although his rites were intended chiefly for the benefit of the dead, considered himself in danger and, while burning the corpse, cried aloud: 'Away, go away, O Death! injure not our sons and our men!' (Rig-veda X, 18, 1.) § 4, As to the rites by means of which the Drug is expelled, they are the performance of myths. There is nothing in worship but what existed before in mythology. What we call a practice is only an imitation of gods, an ὁμοίωσις θεῶν, as man fancies he can bring about the things he wants, by performing the acts which are supposed to have brought about things of the same kind when practiced by the gods. The Parsis, being at a loss to find four-eyed dogs, interpret the name as meaning a dog with two spots above the eyes: but it is clear that the two-spotted dog's services are only accepted for want of a four-eyed one, or of a white one with yellow ears, which amounts to saying that

there were myths, according to which the death-fiend was driven away by dogs of that description. This reminds one at once of the three-headed Kerberos, watching at the doors of hell, and, still more, of the two brown, four-eyed dogs of Yama, who guard the ways to the realm of death. The identity of the four-eyed dog of the Parsi with Kerberos and Yama's dogs appears, moreover, from the Parsi tradition that the yellow-eared dog watches at the head of the Kinvat bridge, which leads from this to the next world, and with his barking drives away the fiend from the souls of the holy ones, lest he should drag them to hell. Wherever the corpse passes by, death walks with it; all along the way it has gone, from the house to its last resting place, a spirit of death is breathing and threatening the living. Therefore, no man, no flock, no being whatever that belongs to the world of Ahura, is allowed to pass by that way until the deadly breath, that blows through it, has been blown away to hell. The four-eyed dog is made to go through the way three times, or six times, or nine times, while the priest helps the look of the dog with his spells, dreaded by the Drug. § 5. The use of gomez in cleansing the unclean is also derived from old mythic conceptions. The storm floods that cleanse the sky of the dark fiends in it were described in a class of myths as the urine of a gigantic animal in the heavens. As the floods from the bull above drive away the fiend from the god, so they do from man here below, they make him 'free from the death-demon' (franasu), and the death-fiend flees away hellwards, pursued by the fiend-smiting spell: 'Perish thou, O Drug..., never more to give over to Death the living world of the good spirit!' § 6. As uncleanness is nothing else than the contagion of death, it is at its greatest intensity when life is just departing. The Nasu at that moment defiles ten persons around the corpse: when a year is over, the corpse defiles no longer. Thus the notion of uncleanness is quite the reverse of what is thought elsewhere: the corpse, when rotten, is less unclean than the body still all but warm with life; death defiles least when it looks most hideous, and defiles most when it might look majestic. The cause is that in the latter case the death demon has just arrived in the fulness of his strength, whereas in the former case time has exhausted his power. § 7. As the focus of the contagion is in the corpse, it must be disposed of so that death may not spread abroad. On this point the old Indo-European customs have been completely changed by Mazdeism. The Indo-Europeans either burnt the corpse or buried it: both customs are held to be sacrilegious in the Avesta. § 8. This view originated from the notion of the holiness of the elements being pushed to an extreme. The elements, fire, earth, and water are holy, and during the Indo-Iranian period they were already considered so, and in the Vedas they are worshipped as godlike beings. Yet this did not prevent the Indian from burning his dead; death did not appear to him so decidedly a work of the demon, and the dead man was a traveler to the other world, whom the fire kindly carried to his heavenly abode 'on his undecaying, flying pinions, wherewith he killed the demons.' The fire was in that, as in the sacrifice, the god that goes from earth to heaven, from man to god, the mediator, the god most friendly to man. In Persia it remains more distant from him; being an earthly form of the eternal, infinite, godly light, no death, no uncleanness can be allowed to enter it, as it is here below the purest offspring of the good spirit, the purest part of his pure creation. Its only function is to repel the fiends with its bright blazing. In every place where Parsis are settled, an everlasting fire is kept, the Bahram fire, which, 'preserved by a more than Vestal care,' and ever fed with perfumes and dry well-blazing wood, whichever side its flames are brought by the wind, it goes and kills thousands and thousands of fiends, as Bahram does in heaven in, If the necessities of life oblige us to employ fire for profane uses, it must be only for a time an exile on our hearth, or in the oven of the potter, and it must go thence to the Right-Place of the fire (Daityo Gatu), the altar of the Bahram fire, there to be restored to the dignity and rights of its nature. At least, let no gratuitous and wanton degradation be inflicted upon it: even blowing it with the breath of the mouth is a crime'; burning the dead is the most heinous of sins: in the times of Strabo it was a capital crime, and the Avesta expresses

the same, when putting it in the number of those sins for which there is no atonement. Water was looked upon in the same light. Bringing dead matter to it is as bad as bringing it to the fire. The Magi are said to have overthrown a king for having built bath-houses, as they cared more for the cleanness of water than for their own. § 9. Not less holy was the earth, or, at least, it became so. There was a goddess who lived in her, Spenta Armaiti; no corpse ought to defile her sacred breast: burying the dead is, like burning the dead, a deed for which there is no atonement. It was not always so in Persia: the burning of the dead had been forbidden for years, while the burying was still general. Cambyses had roused the indignation of the Persians by burning the corpse of Amasis: yet, years later, Persians still buried their dead. But the priests already felt scruples, and feared to defile a god. Later on, with the ascendancy of the Magian religion, the sacerdotal observances became the general law. § 10. Therefore the corpse is laid on the summit of a mountain, far from man, from water, from tree, from fire, and from the earth itself, as it is separated from it by a layer of stones or bricks. Special buildings, the Dakhmas, were erected for this purpose. There far from the world the dead were left to lie, beholding the sun. § 11. Not every corpse defiles man, but only those of such beings as belong to the world of Ahura. They are the only ones in whose death the demon triumphs. The corpse of an Ahrimanic creature does not defile; as its life was incarnate death, the spring of death that was in it is dried up with its last breath: it killed while alive, it can do so no more when dead; it becomes clean by dying. None of the faithful are defiled by the corpse of an Ashemaogha or of a Khrafstra. Nay, killing them is a pious work, as it is killing Ahriman himself'. § 11. Not only real death makes one unclean, but partial death too. Everything that goes out of the body of man is dead, and becomes the property of the demon. The going breath is unclean, it is forbidden to blow the fire with it, and even to approach the fire without screening it from the contagion with a Penom. Parings of nails and cuttings or shavings of hair are unclean, and become weapons in the hands of the demons unless they have been protected by certain rites and spells. Any phenomenon by which the bodily nature is altered, whether accompanied with danger to health or not, was viewed as a work of the demon, and made the person unclean in whom it took place. One of these phenomena, which is a special object of attention in the Vendidad, is the uncleanness of women during their menses. The menses are sent by Ahriman, especially when they last beyond the usual time : therefore a woman, as long as they last, is unclean and possessed of the demon: she must be kept confined, apart from the faithful whom her touch would defile, and from the fire which her very look would injure; she is not allowed to eat as much as she wishes, as the strength she might acquire would accrue to the fiends. Her food is not given to her from hand to hand, but is passed to her from a distance, in a long leaden spoon. The origin of all these notions is in certain physical instincts, in physiological psychology, which is the reason why they are found among peoples very far removed from one another by race or religion, But they took in Persia a new meaning as they were made a logical part of the whole religious system. § 13. A woman that has been just delivered of a child is also unclean, although it would seem that she ought to be considered pure amongst the pure, since life has been increased by her in the world, and she has enlarged the realm of Ormazd. But the strength of old instincts overcame the drift of new principles. Only the case when the woman has been delivered of a still-born child is examined in the Vendidad. She is unclean as having been in contact with a dead creature; and she must first drink gomez to wash over the grave in her womb. So utterly unclean is she, that she is not even allowed to drink water, unless she is in danger of death; and even then, as the sacred element has been defiled, she is liable to the penalty of a Pesho-tanu. It appears from modern customs that the treatment is the same when the child is born alive: the reason of which is that, in any case, during the first three days after delivery she is in danger of death. A great fire is lighted to keep away the fiends, who use then their utmost efforts to kill her and her child '. She is unclean only because the death-fiend is in her. § 14. Logic

required that the sick man should be treated as an unclean one, that is, as one possessed. Sickness, being sent by Ahriman, ought to be cured like all his other works, by washings and spells. In fact, the medicine of spells was considered the most powerful of all, and although it did not oust the medicine of the lancet and that of drugs, yet it was more highly esteemed and less mistrusted. The commentator on the Vendidad very sensibly observes that if it does not relieve, it will surely do no harm, which seems not to have been a matter of course with those who heal by the knife and physic. It appears from the last Fargard that all or, at least, many diseases might be cured by spells and Barashnum washing. It appears from Herodotus and Agathias that contagious diseases required the same treatment as uncleanness: the sick man was excluded from the community of the faithful, until cured and cleansed according to the rites. § 15. The unclean are confined in a particular place, apart from all clean persons and objects, the Armest-gah, which may be described, therefore, as the Dakhma for the living. All the unclean, all those struck with temporary death, the man who has touched dead matter, the woman in her menses, or just delivered of child, the leper, or the man who has made himself unclean for ever by carrying a corpse alone, stay there all the time of their uncleanness. § 16. Thus far for general principles. From the diversity of circumstances arises a system of casuistry, the development of which may be followed first through the glosses to the Vendidad, in which the labors of several generations of theologians are embodied, and, later on, through the Ravaets. We will give a few instances of it, as found in the Vendidad itself. The process of the cleansing varies according to the degree of uncleanness; and, again, the degree of uncleanness depends on the state of the thing that defiles and the nature of the thing that is defiled. The uncleanness from the dead is the worst of all, and it is at its utmost when contracted before the Nasu has been expelled from the corpse by the Sag-did: it can be cured only by means of the most complicated system of cleansing, the nine nights' Barashnum. If the Nasu has already been expelled from the corpse, as the defiling power was less, a simple washing once made, the Ghosel, is enough. The defiling power of the Nasu reaches farther, if the death has just taken place, and if the dying creature occupied a higher rank in the scale of beings; for the more recent the victory of the demon, or the higher the being he has overcome, the stronger he must have been himself. Menstruous women are cleansed by the Ghosel. As for things they are more or less deeply defiled according to their degree of penetrability: metal vessels can be cleansed, earthen vessels cannot; leather is more easily cleansed than woven cloth; dry wood than soft wood, Wet matter is a better conductor of uncleanness than dry matter, and corpses cease to defile after a year.

B.

§ 17. In the cases heretofore reviewed, only religious purposes are concerned. There is another order of laws, in which, although religion interferes, yet it is not at the root; namely, the laws about contracts and assaults, to which the fourth Fargard is devoted, and which are the only remains extant of the civil and penal legislation of Zoroastrianism. The contracts were divided into two classes, according to their mode of being entered into, and according to the value of their object. As to their mode they are word-contracts or hand-contracts: as to their object, they are sheep-contracts, ox-contracts, man-contracts, or field-contracts, which being estimated in money value are contracts to the amount of 3, 12, 500 istirs, and upwards. No contract can be made void by the will of one party alone; he who breaks a contract is obliged to pay the value of the contract next higher in value. The family and the next of kin are, it would seem, answerable for the fulfilment of a contract, a principle of the old Indo-European civil law. § 18. Assaults are of seven degrees: agerepta, avaoirista, stroke, sore wound, bloody wound, broken bone, and manslaughter. The gravity of the guilt does not depend on the gravity of the deed only, but also on its frequency. Each of these seven crimes amounts, by its being repeated without having been atoned for, to

the crime that immediately follows in the scale, so that an agerepta seven times repeated amounts to manslaughter.

C.

§ 19. Every crime makes the guilty man liable to two penalties, one here below, and another in the next world. The penalty here below consists of a certain number of stripes with the Aspahe-astra or the Sraosho-karana. The unit for heavy penalties is two hundred stripes; the crime and the criminal thus punished are called Pesho-tanu or Tanu-peretha (Parsi: Tanafuhr). The two words literally mean, 'one who pays with his own body,' and 'payment with one's body,' and seem to have originally amounted to worthy of death, worthiness of death; ' and in effect the word Pesho-tanu is often interpreted in the Pahlavi Commentary by margarzan, 'worthy of death.' But, on the whole, it was attached to the technical meaning of 'one who has to receive two hundred strokes with the horse-whip.' The lowest penalty in the Vendidad is five stripes, and the degrees from five stripes to Pesho-tanu are ten, fifteen, thirty, fifty, seventy, ninety, two hundred. For instance, Agerepta is punished with five stripes, avairista with ten, stroke with fifteen, sore wound with thirty, bloody wound with fifty, broken bone with seventy, manslaughter with ninety; a second manslaughter, committed without the former being atoned for, is punished with the Peshotanu penalty. In the same way the six other crimes, repeated eight, or seven, or six, or five, or four, or three times make the committer go through the whole series of penalties up to the Peshotanu penalty. § 20. If one reviews the different crimes described in the Vendidad, and the respective penalties prescribed for them, one cannot but wonder at first sight at the strange inequality between crime and penalty. Beccaria would have felt uncomfortable while reading the Vendidad. It is safer to kill a man than to serve bad food to a shepherd's dog, for the manslayer gets off with ninety stripes, whereas the bad master is at once a Peshotanu, and will receive two hundred stripes. Two hundred stripes are awarded if one tills land in which a corpse has been buried within the year, if a woman just delivered of child drinks water', if one suppresses the menses of a woman, if one performs a sacrifice in a house where a man has just died, if one neglects fastening the corpse of a dead man so that birds or dogs may not take dead matter to trees and rivers. Two hundred stripes if one throws on the ground a bone of a man's corpse, of a dog's carcass as big as two ribs, four hundred if one throws a bone as big as a breast bone, six hundred if one throws a skull, one thousand if the whole corpse. Four hundred stripes if one, being in a state of uncleanness, touches water or trees, four hundred if of covers with cloth a dead man's feet, six hundred if one covers his legs, eight hundred if the whole body. Five hundred stripes for killing a whelp, six hundred for killing a stray dog, seven hundred for a house dog, eight hundred for a shepherd's dog, one thousand stripes for killing a Vanhapara dog, ten thousand stripes for killing a water dog. Capital punishment is expressly pronounced only against the false cleanser and the ' carrier alone.' Yet any one who bethinks himself of the spirit of the old Aryan legislation will easily conceive that there may be in its eyes many crimes more heinous, and to be punished more severely, than manslaughter: offenses against man injure only one man; offenses against gods endanger all mankind. No one should wonder at the unqualified cleanser being put to death who reads Demosthenes' Neaera; the Persians who defiled the ground by burying a corpse were not more severely punished than the Greeks were for defiling with corpses the holy ground of Delos, or than the conquerors at Arginousae; nor would the Athenians, who put to death Atarbes, have much stared at the awful revenge taken for the murder of the sacred dog. There is hardly any prescription in the Vendidad, however odd and absurd it may seem, but has its counterpart or its explanation in other Aryan legislations: if we had a Latin or a Greek Vendtdad, I doubt whether it would look more rational. § 21. Yet, if theoretically, the very absurdity of its principles is nothing peculiar to the Mazdean law, nay, is

a proof of its authenticity, it may be doubted whether it could ever have been actually applied in the form stated in the texts. It may be doubted whether the murder of a shepherd's dog could have been actually punished with eight hundred stripes, much more whether the murder of a water dog could have been really punished with ten thousand stripes, unless we suppose that human endurance was different in ancient Persia from what it is elsewhere, or even in modern Persia herself. Now as we see that in modern tradition bodily punishment is estimated in money value, that is to say, converted into fines, a conversion which is alluded to in the Pahlavi translation, it may readily be admitted that as early as the time of the last edition of the Vendidad, that conversion had already been made. In the Ravaets, two hundred stripes, or a Tanafuhr, are estimated as equal to three hundred istirs or twelve hundred dirhems, or thirteen hundred and fifty rupees; a stripe is therefore about equal to six rupees. How far that system prevailed in practice, whether the guilty might take advantage of this commutation of his own accord, or only with the assent of the judge, we cannot decide. It is very likely that the riches of the fire temples came for the most part from that source, and that the sound of the dirhems often made the Sraosokarana fall from the hands of the Mobeds. That the system of financial penalties did not, however, suppress the system of bodily penalties, appears from the customs of the Parsis who apply both, and from the Pahlavi Commentary which expressly distinguishes three sorts of atonement: the atonement by money (khvastak), the atonement by the Sraosho-karana, and the atonement by cleansing. § 22. This third element of atonement is strictly religious. It consists in repentance, which is manifested by avowal of the guilt and by the recital of a formula of repentance, the Patet. The performance of the Patet has only a religious effect: it saves the sinner from penalties in the other world, but not from those here below: it delivers him before God, but not before man. When the sacrilegious cleanser has repented his sin, he is not the less flayed and beheaded, but his soul is saved. Yet, although it has no efficacy in causing the sin to be remitted, the absence of it has power to cause it to be aggravated. § 23. Thus far for sins that can be atoned for. There are some that are an anaperetha, 'inexpiable,' which means, as it seems, that they are punished with death here below, and with torments in the other world. Amongst the anaperetha sins are named the burning of the dead, the burying of the dead, the eating dead matter', unnatural sin, and self-pollution. Although it is not expressly declared that these sins were punished with death, yet we know it of several of them, either from Greek accounts or from Parsi tradition. There are also whole classes of sinners whose life, it would seem, can be taken by any one who detects them in the act, such as the courtesan, the highwayman, the Sodomite, and the corpse burner. § 24. Such are the most important principles of the Mazdean law that can be gathered from the Vendidad. These details, incomplete as they are, may give us an idea, if not of the Sassanian practice, at least of the Sassanian ideal. That it was an ideal which intended to pass into practice, we know from the religious wars against Armenia, and from the fact that very often the superintendence of justice and the highest offices of the state were committed to Mobeds. We must now add a few words on the plan of the following translation. As to our method we beg to refer to the second chapter above. It rests on the Parsi tradition, corrected or confirmed by the comparative method. The Parsi tradition is found in the Pahlavi Commentary, the understanding of which was facilitated to us first by the Gujarathi translation and paraphrase of Aspendiarji, and by a Persian transliteration and translation belonging to the Haug collection in Munich, for the use of which we were indebted to the obliging kindness of the Director of the State Library in Munich, Professor von Halm. The Ravaets and the Saddar' frequently gave us valuable information as to the traditional meaning of doubtful passages. As for the works of European scholars, we are much indebted to the Commentary on the Avesta by Professor Spiegel, and to the translations in the second edition of Martin Haug's Essays. We have followed the text of the Avesta as given by Westergaard; the division into paragraphs is according to Westergaard; but we

have given in brackets the corresponding divisions of Professor Spiegel's edition. Many passages in the Vendidad Sadah are mere quotations from the Pahlavi Commentary which have crept into the Sadah text: we have not admitted them into the text. They are generally known to be spurious from their not being translated in the Commentary: yet the absence of a Pahlavi translation is not always an unmistakable sign of such spuriousness. Sometimes the translation has been lost in our manuscripts, or omitted as having already been given in identical or nearly identical terms. When we thought that this was the case, we have admitted the untranslated passages into the text, but in brackets. We have divided the principal Fargards into several sections according to the matter they contain: this division, which is meant as an attempt to resolve the Vendidad into its primitive fragments, has, of course, no traditional authority, the divisions into paragraphs being the only ones that rest upon the authority of the manuscripts. The translation will be found, in many passages, to differ greatly from the translations published heretofore. The nature of this series of translations did not allow us to give full justificatory notes, but we have endeavored in most cases to make the explanatory notes account to scholars for the new meanings we have adopted, and, in some cases, we hope that the original text, read anew, will by itself justify our translation. We must not conclude this introduction without tendering our warmest thanks to Mr. E.W. West, who kindly revised the MS. of the translation before it went to press, and who has, we hope, succeeded in making our often imperfect English more acceptable to English readers.

JAMES DARMESTETER.

PARIS,

NOVEMBER 1879.

VENDIDAD

VENDIDAD

FARGARD I

This chapter is an enumeration of sixteen lands created by Ahura Mazda, and of as many plagues created in opposition by Angra Mainyu. Many attempts have been made, not only to identify these sixteen lands, but also to draw historical conclusions from their order of succession, as representing the actual order of the migrations and settlements of the old Iranian tribes. But there is nothing in the text that would authorize us to look to it even for legendary records, much less for real history. We have here nothing more than a geographical description of Iran, such as might be expected in a religious work like the Vendidad, that is to say, one that contains mythical lands as well as real countries. It is not easy to decide with perfect certainty, in every case, whether we have to do with a land of the former or of the latter kind, owing partly to our deficient knowledge of the geography of ancient Iran, partly to the fact that names, originally belonging to mythical lands, are often in later times attached to real ones. Of these sixteen lands there are certainly nine which have really existed, and of which we know the geographical position, as we are able to follow their names from the records of the Achraemenian kings or the works of classical writers down to the map of modern Iran. The real existence of Nisaya is certain, although its position cannot be exactly determined (see the note to § 8). For the other lands we are confined for information to the Pahlavi Commentary. Kakhra is only transliterated, whether the name was then too much known to require any further explanation or too little to allow of any. Urva is described as being Masan ('the land of Maslin' or 'the land of the Great'), a name which applied, in the Sassanian ages, to the land around Ispahan (Firdausi, ed. Mohl, V, 270). For Varena, the four-cornered, the Commentary hesitates between the Padashkhvargar mountains (the Elborz) and Kirman, a hesitation easily accounted for by the fact that Varena is the seat of the struggle between Asis Dahaka and Thraetaona, between the storm serpent and the storm god, and was formerly 'the four-sided Heaven' (see Introd. IV, 12, 23). Modern tradition decides in favor of Padashkhvargar, probably because the serpent was at last bound to Demavand, the highest peak in that chain. The claims of Kirmān were probably founded on the popular etymology of its name, 'the land of snakes.' 'Vaekereta, of the evil shadows', is identified with Kapul (Cabul); whether rightly or wrongly, we are unable to decide; yet, as it is spoken of only as the seat of the adventures of Keresaspa (see Introd. IV, 21), it may be suspected that this assimilation rests merely on the fact that, in later tradition, the legend of Keresaspa was localized in the tableland of Peshyansai, in Kabulistan (Bund. XXX). In the enumeration, there is no apparent order whatever, and Ormazd, in his creations, seems to travel all over the map, forward and backward, without the slightest regard to the cardinal points. Yet, the starting point and the final point have not been arbitrarily chosen: the first land created was 'the Airyana Vaego by the Vanguhi Daitya,' and the last was the land by the Rangha. Now, the Vanguhi and the Rangha were originally the celestial rivers that came down from heaven (as two heavenly Gangas) to surround the earth, the one in the east, the other in the west (Bund. XX); this is why the creation begins with a land by the Vanguhi and ends with a land by the Rangha. In the Sassanian ages, when the Tigris was definitively the border of Iran in the west, the Rangha was identified with it, and the sixteenth land is accordingly described in the Commentary as being Arvasthan-i-Rum, or Roman Mesopotamia. But all the Avesta passages in which the Rangha is cited refer to its mythical nature, as the river in the far-off horizon, as the surrounding Okeanos,

and, now and then, still resembling its Vedic homonym, the Rasi, as the river that divides the gods from the fiends. The first land, the Airyana Vaego by the Vanguhi Daitya, remained to the last a mythical region. It was originally the abode of Yima and of the righteous, that is to say, a particular form of paradise (see Introd. IV, 38, and Farg. II). Later on, it was looked for in the countries north of Adarbaijan, probably in order that it should be as near as possible to the seat of the Zoroastrian religion, yet without losing its supernatural character by the counterevidence of facts. This brought about the division of the Vanguhi Daitya into two rivers: as the Airyana Vaego was localized in the country north of Adarbaijan, the river in it must become identified with the Araxes (Aras); but, at the same time, it continued to surround the world eastward under the name of Veh (Vanguhi), which was the Sassanian name of the Oxus-Indus. It seems that in the time of Herodotus, the Araxes and the Oxus were considered one and the same river, as the Oxus and the Indus were later on; this would account for his strange statement that the Araxes, which is confessedly with him the Oxus or Yaxartes, spring from the land of the Matianians, like the Gyndes, and flows eastwards (I, 202; IV, 40; cf. III, 36; IV, II); and, at the same time, this would account both for how the Airyana Vaego could be localized in the basin of the Araxes and how the Oxus could flow eastwards to fall into the Arabian sea. It follows hence that no historical conclusions can be drawn from this description: it was necessary that it should begin with the Vanguhi and end with the Rangha. To look to it for an account of geographical migrations, is converting cosmology into history. Of the counter-creations of Angra Mainyu there is little to be said: they are different vices and plagues, which are generally unconnected with the country to the creation of which they answer. Some of them are expressed by ἀπαξ λεγόμενα, the meaning of which is doubtful or unknown. If we assume that only lands belonging to the Iranian world were admitted into the list, the mention of the Seven Rivers would indicate that the first Fargard was not composed earlier than the time when the basin of the Indus became a part of Iran, that is, not earlier than the reign of Darius the First.

1. Ahura Mazda spake unto Spitama Zarathustra, saying:

2. I have made every land dear to its dwellers, even though it had no charms whatever in it: had I not made every land dear to its dwellers, even though it had no charms whatever in it, then the whole living world would have invaded the Airyana Vaego

3. The first of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the Airyana Vaego, by the good river Daitya. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the serpent in the river and winter, a work of the Daevas

4. There are ten winter months there, two summer months; and those are cold for the waters, cold for the earth, cold for the trees. Winter falls there, with the worst of its plagues.

5. The second of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the plains in Sughdha. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the fly Skaitya, which brings death to the cattle.

6. The third of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the strong, holy Mouru. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft sinful lusts

7. The fourth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the beautiful Bakhdhi with high-lifted banners. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the Bravara

8.The fifth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Nisaya, that lies between Mouru and Bakhdhi. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the sin of unbelief

9.The sixth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Haroyu with its lake. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the stained mosquito

10.The seventh of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Vaekereta ', of the evil shadows. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the Pairika Knathaiti, who clave unto Keresaspa

11.The eighth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Urva of the rich pastures. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the sin of pride

12.The ninth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Khnenta in Vehrkana. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft a sin for which there is no atonement, the unnatural sin

13.The tenth of the good lands and. countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the beautiful Harahvaiti. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft a sin for which there is no atonement, the burying of the dead

14. The eleventh of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the bright, glorious Haetumant. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the evil witchcraft of the Yatus

15.And this is how the Yatu's nature shows itself: it shows itself by the look; and then, whenever the wizard goes and howls forth his spells, most deadly works of witchcraft go forth

16.The twelfth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was Ragha of the three races. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft the sin of utter unbelief

17.The thirteenth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the strong, holy Kakhra. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft a sin for which there is no atonement, the burning of corpses

18.The fourteenth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the four-cornered Varena, for which was born Thrae- taona, who smote Azis Dahaka. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter-created by his witchcraft abnormal issues in women ' and the oppression of foreign rulers

19.The fifteenth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the Seven Rivers. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft abnormal issues in women and excessive heat

20. The sixteenth of the good lands and countries which I, Ahura Mazda, created, was the land by the floods of the Rangha, where people live without a head. Thereupon came Angra Mainyu, who is all death, and he counter created by his witchcraft winter, a work of the Daevas

21. There are still other lands and countries, beautiful and deep, desirable and bright, and thriving

FARGARD II

YIMA (GAMSHED)

This Fargard may be divided into two parts. First part (1-20). Ahura Mazda proposes to Yima, the son of Vivanghat, to receive the law from him and to bring it to men. On his refusal, he bids him keep his creatures and make them prosper. Yima accordingly makes them thrive and increase, keeps death and disease away from them, and three times enlarges the earth, which had become "too narrow for its inhabitants. Second part (21 to the end). On the approach of a dire winter, which is to destroy every living creature, Yima, being advised by Ahura, builds a Vara to keep there the seeds of every kind of animals and plants, and the blessed live there a most happy life under his rule. The tale in the first part refers to Yima as the first man, the first king, and the founder of civilization (see Introd. IV, 38); the tale in the second part is a combination of the myths of Yima, as the first dead and the king of the dead over whom he rules in a region of bliss, and of old myths about the end of the world. The world, lasting a long year of twelve millenniums, was to end by a dire winter, like the Eddie Fimbul winter, to be followed by an everlasting spring, when men, sent back to earth from the heavens, should enjoy, in an eternal earthly life, the same happiness that they had enjoyed after their death in the realm of Yima. But as in the definitive form which was taken by Mazdean cosmology the world was made to end by fire, its destruction by winter was no longer the last incident of its life, and therefore, the Var of Yima, instead of remaining, as it was originally, the paradise that gives back to earth its inhabitants, came to be nothing more than a sort of Noah's ark (see Introd. IV, 39, and Orm. Ahr. §§ 94, 131, 184, 185).

I.

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: O Ahura Mazda, most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I Who was the first mortal, before myself, Zarathustra, with whom thou, Ahura Mazda, didst converse 1, whom thou didst teach the law of Ahura, the law of Zarathustra?

2. Ahura Mazda answered: The fair Yima, the great shepherd, O holy Zarathustra! he was the first mortal, before thee, Zarathustra, with whom I, Ahura Mazda, did converse, whom I taught the law of Ahura, the law of Zarathustra.

3. Unto him, O Zarathustra, I, Ahura Mazda, spake, saying: 'Well, fair Yima, son of Vivanghat, be thou the preacher and the bearer of my law!' And the fair Yima, O Zarathustra, replied unto me, saying: 'I was not born, I was not taught to be the preacher and the bearer of thy law.'

4. Then I, Ahura Mazda, said thus unto him, O Zarathustra: 'Since thou wantest not to be the preacher and the bearer of my law. then make thou my worlds thrive, make my worlds increase: undertake thou to nourish, to rule, and to watch over my world.'

5. And the fair Yima replied unto me, O Zarathustra, saying: ' Yes I will make thy worlds thrive, I will make thy worlds increase. Yes! I will nourish, and rule, and watch over thy world. There shall be, while I am king, neither cold wind nor hot wind, neither disease nor death.'

7. Then I, Ahura Mazda, brought two implements unto him: a golden ring and a poniard inlaid with gold. Behold, here Yima bears the royal sway!

8. Thus, under the sway of Yima, three hundred winters passed away, and the earth was replenished with flocks and herds, with men and dogs and birds and with red blazing fires, and there was no more room for flocks, herds, and men

9. Then I warned the fair Yima, saying: ' O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat, the earth has become full of flocks and herds, of men and dogs and birds and of red blazing fires, and there is no more room for flocks, herds, and men.'

10. Then Yima stepped forward, towards the luminous space, southwards, to meet the sun, and (afterwards) he pressed the earth with the golden ring, and bored it with the poniard, speaking thus: 'O Spenta Armaiti, kindly open asunder and stretch thyself afar, to bear flocks and herds and men.'

11. And Yima made the earth grow larger by one-third than it was before, and there came flocks and herds and men, at his will and wish, as many as he wished

12. Thus, under the sway of Yima, six hundred winters passed away, and the earth was replenished with flocks and herds, with men and dogs and birds and with red blazing fires, and there was no more room for flocks, herds, and men.

13. And I warned the fair Yima, saying: ' O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat, the earth has become full of flocks and herds, of men and dogs and birds and of red blazing fires, and there is no more room for flocks, herds, and men.'

14. Then Yima stepped forward, towards the luminous space, southwards, to meet the sun, and (afterwards) he pressed the earth with the golden ring, and bored it with the poniard, speaking thus: 'O Spenta Armaiti, kindly open asunder and stretch thyself afar, to bear flocks and herds and men.'

15. And Yima made the earth grow larger by two-thirds than it was before, and there came flocks and herds and men, at his will and wish, as many as he wished

16. Thus, under the sway of Yima, nine hundred winters passed away, and the earth was replenished with flocks and herds, with men and dogs and birds and with red blazing fires, and there was no more room for flocks, herds, and men

17. And I warned the fair Yima, saying: 'O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat, the earth has become full of flocks and herds, of men and dogs and birds and of red blazing fires, and there is no more room for flocks, herds, and men.'

18. Then Yima stepped forward, towards the luminous space, southwards, to meet the sun, and (afterwards) he pressed the earth with the golden ring, and bored it with the poniard, speaking thus: 'O Spenta Armaiti, kindly open asunder and stretch thyself afar, to bear flocks and herds and men.'

19. And Yima made the earth grow larger by three-thirds than it was before, and there came flocks and herds and men, at his will and wish, as many as he wished.

II.

21. The Maker, Ahura Mazda, of high renown in the Airyana Vaego, by the good river Ditya, called together a meeting of the celestial gods. The fair Yima, the good shepherd, of high renown in the Airyana Vaego, by the good river Daitya, called together a meeting of the excellent mortals. To that meeting came Ahura Mazda, of high renown in the Airyana Vaego, by the good river Daitya; he came together with the celestial gods. To that meeting came the fair Yima, the good shepherd, of high renown in the Airyana Vaego, by the good river Daitya; he came together with the excellent mortals.

22. And Ahura Mazda spake unto Yima, saying: 'O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat! Upon the material world the fatal winters are going to fall, that shall bring the fierce, foul frost; upon the material world the fatal winters are going to fall, that shall make snow-flakes fall thick, even an aredvi deep on the highest tops of mountains

23. And all the three sorts of beasts shall perish, those that live in the wilderness, and those that live on the tops of the mountains, and those that live in the bosom of the dale, under the shelter of stables

24. Before that winter, those fields would bear plenty of grass for cattle: now with floods that stream, with snows that melt, it will seem a happy land in the world, the land wherein footprints even of sheep may still be seen

25. Therefore make thee a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square, and, thither bring the seeds of sheep and oxen, of men, of dogs, of birds, and of red blazing fires. Therefore make thee a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square, to be an abode for men; a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square, to be a fold for flocks.

26. There thou shalt make waters flow in a bed a hathra long; there thou shalt settle birds, by the ever-green banks that bear never-failing food. There thou shalt establish dwelling places, consisting of a house with a balcony, a courtyard, and a gallery

27. Thither thou shalt bring the seeds of men and women, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth; thither thou shalt bring the seeds of every kind of cattle, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth

28. Thither thou shalt bring the seeds of every kind of tree, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth; thither thou shalt bring the seeds of every kind of fruit, the fullest of food and sweetest of odor. All those seeds shalt thou bring, two of every kind, to be kept inexhaustible there, so long as those men shall stay in the Vara.

29. There shall be no humpbacked, none bulged forward there; no impotent, no lunatic; no poverty, no lying; no meanness, no jealousy; no decayed tooth, no leprosy to be confined, nor any of the brands wherewith Angra Mainyu stamps the bodies of mortals

30. In the largest part of the place thou shalt make nine streets, six in the middle part, three in the smallest. To the streets of the largest part thou shalt bring a thousand seeds of men and women; to the streets of

the middle part, six hundred; to the streets of the smallest part, three hundred. That Vara thou shalt seal up with the golden ring, and thou shalt make a door, and a window self-shining within

31. Then Yima said within himself: 'How shall I manage to make that Vara which Ahura Mazda has commanded me to make?' And Ahura Mazda said unto Yima: 'O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat I Crush the earth with a stamp of thy heel, and then knead it with thy hands, as the potter does when kneading the potter's clay.'

32. And Yima did as Ahura Mazda wished; he crushed the earth with a stamp of his heel, he kneaded it with his hands, as the potter does when kneading the potter's clay

33. And Yima made a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square. There he brought the seeds of sheep and oxen, of men, of dogs, of birds, and of red blazing fires. He made a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square, to be an abode for men; a Vara, long as a riding-ground on every side of the square, to be a fold for flocks

34. There he made waters flow in a bed a hathra long; there he settled birds, by the evergreen banks that bear never-failing food. There he established dwelling places, consisting of a house with a balcony, a courtyard, and a gallery

35. There he brought the seeds of men and women, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth; there he brought the seeds of every kind of cattle, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth

36. There he brought the seeds of every kind of tree, of the greatest, best, and finest kinds on this earth; there he brought the seeds of every kind of fruit, the fullest of food and sweetest of odor. All those seeds he brought, two of every kind, to be kept inexhaustible there, so long as those men shall stay in the Vara

37. And there were no humpbacked, none bulged forward there; no impotent, no lunatic; no poverty, no lying; no meanness, no jealousy; no decayed tooth, no leprous to be confined, nor any of the brands wherewith Angra Mainyu stamps the bodies of mortals

38. In the largest part of the place he made nine streets, six in the middle part, three in the smallest. To the streets of the largest part he brought a thousand seeds of men and women; to the streets of the middle part, six hundred; to the streets of the smallest part, three hundred. That Vara he sealed up with the golden ring, and he made a door, and a window self-shining within

39. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What [lights are there to give light] in the Vara which Yima made?

40. Ahura Mazda answered: 'There are uncreated lights and created lights. There the stars, the moon, and the sun are only once (a year) seen to rise and set, and a year seems only as a day.

41. 'Every fortieth year, to every couple two are born, a male and a female ' And thus it is for every sort of cattle. And the men in the Vara which Yima made live the happiest life.'

42. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is he who brought the law of Mazda into the Vara which Yima made? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It was the bird Karshipta, O holy Zarathustra!'

43. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the lord and ruler there? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Urvatad-nara, O Zarathustra! and thyself, Zarathustra.'

FARGARD III

THE EARTH

I (1-6).The five places where the Earth feels most joy

II (7-11).The five places where the Earth feels most sorrow

III (12-35).The five things which most rejoice the Earth.

IV (36-42).Corpses ought not to be buried in the Earth. There is a resemblance as to words between the first and

1.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the first place where the Earth feels most happy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place whereon one of the faithful steps forward, O Spitama Zarathustra I with the holy wood in his hand, the baresma in his hand, the holy meat in his hand, the holy mortar in his hand, fulfilling the law with love, and beseeching aloud Mithra, the lord of wide pastures, and Rima Hvastra.'

2, 3.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the second place where the Earth feels most happy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place whereon one of the faithful erects a house with a priest within, with cattle, with a wife, with children, and good herds within; and wherein afterwards the cattle go on thriving, holiness is thriving, fodder is thriving, the dog is thriving, the wife is thriving, the child is thriving, the fire is thriving, and every blessing of life is thriving.'

4.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the third place where the Earth feels most happy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place where one of the faithful cultivates most corn, grass, and fruit, O Spitama Zarathustra! where he waters ground that is dry, or dries ground that is too wet.'

5.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the fourth place where the Earth feels most happy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place where there is most increase of flocks and herds.'

6.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the fifth place where the Earth feels most happy? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the place where flocks and herds yield most dung.'

II.

7.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the first place where the Earth feels sorest grief? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the neck of Arezulra 1, whereon the hosts of fiends rush forth from the burrow of the Drug.'

8.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I Which is the second place where the Earth feels sorest grief? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place wherein most corpses of dogs and of men lie buried'

9.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the third place where the Earth feels sorest grief? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the place whereon stand most of those Dakhmas on which corpses of men are deposited.'

10.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the fourth place where the Earth feels sorest grief? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is the place wherein are most burrows of the creatures of Angra Mainyu.'

11.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the fifth place where the Earth feels sorest grief? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the place whereon the wife and children of one of the faithful, O Spitama Zarathustra! are driven along the way of captivity, the dry, the dusty way, and lift up a voice of wailing.'

III.

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I Who is the first that rejoices the Earth with greatest joy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is he who digs out of it most corpses of dogs and men.'

13.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the second that rejoices the Earth with greatest joy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is he who pulls down most of those Dakhmas on which corpses of men are deposited.'

14.Let no man alone by himself carry a corpse. If a man alone by himself carry a corpse, the Nasu rushes upon him, to defile him, from the nose of the dead, from the eye, from the tongue, from the jaws, from the sexual organ, from the hinder parts. This Drug, this Nasu, falls upon him, stains him even to the end of the nails, and he is unclean, thenceforth, for ever and ever.

15.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What shall be the place of that man who has carried a corpse alone? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It shall be the place on this earth wherein is least water and fewest plants, whereof the ground is the cleanest and the driest and the least passed through by flocks and herds, by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful.'

16.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

17.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty paces from the fire, thirty paces from the water, thirty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma, three paces from the faithful.

18, 19.'There, on that place, shall the worshippers of Mazda erect an enclosure, and therein shall they establish him with food, therein shall they establish him with clothes, with the coarsest food and with the most worn-out clothes. That food he shall live on, those clothes he shall wear, and thus shall they let him live, until he has grown to the age of a Hana, or of a Zaurura, or of a Pairista-khshudra

20, 21.'And when he has grown to the age of a Hana, or of a Zaurura, or of a Pairista-khshudra, then the worshippers of Mazda shall order a man strong, vigorous, and skillful, to flay the skin off his body and cut the head off his neck', on the top of the mountain: and they shall deliver his corpse unto the greediest of the corpse-eating creatures made by Ahura Mazda, to the greedy ravens, with these words: "The man here has repented of all his evil thoughts, words, and deeds. If he has committed any other evil deed, it is remitted by his repentance: if he has committed no other evil deed, he is absolved by his repentance, for ever and ever'

22.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the third that rejoices the Earth with greatest joy? Ahura Mazda answered: ' It is he who fills up most burrows of the creatures of Angra Mainyu.'

23. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the fourth that rejoices the Earth with greatest joy? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is he who cultivates most corn, grass, and fruit, O Spitama Zarathustra! who waters ground that is dry, or dries ground that is too wet

24. 'Unhappy is the land that has long lain unsown with the seed of the sower and wants a good husbandman, like a well-shapen maiden who has long gone childless and wants a good husband.

25. 'He who would till the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! with the left arm and the right, with the right arm and the left, unto him will she bring forth plenty, like a loving bride on her bed, unto her beloved; the bride will bring forth children, the earth will bring forth plenty of fruit.

26, 27. 'He who would till the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! with the left arm and the right, with the right arm and the left, unto him thus says the Earth: "O thou man! who dost till me with the left arm and the right, with the right arm and the left [hither shall people ever come and beg (for bread)] here shall I ever go on bearing, bringing forth all manner of food, bringing forth profusion of corn'

28, 29. 'He who does not till the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! with the left arm and the right, with the right arm and the left, unto him thus says the Earth: "O thou man! who dost not till me with the left arm and the right, with the right arm and the left, ever shalt thou stand at the door of the stranger, among those who beg for bread; ever shalt thou wait there for the refuse that is brought unto thee, brought by those who have profusion of wealth.'

30. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What is the food that fills the law of Mazda? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is sowing corn again and again, O Spitama Zarathustra!

31. 'He who sows corn, sows holiness: he makes the law of Mazda grow higher and higher: he makes the law of Mazda as fat as he can with a hundred acts of adoration, a thousand oblations, ten thousand sacrifices

32. 'When barley is coming forth, the Daevas start up; when the corn is growing rank, then faint the Daevas' hearts; when the corn is being ground, the Daevas groan; when wheat is coming forth, the Daevas are destroyed. In that house they can no longer stay, from that house they are beaten away, wherein wheat is thus coming forth. It is as though red hot iron were turned about in their throats, when there is plenty of corn

33. 'Then let (the priest) teach people this holy saying: "No one who does not eat, has strength to do works of holiness, strength to do works of husbandry, strength to beget children. By eating every material creature lives, by not eating it dies away'

34. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the fifth that rejoices the Earth with greatest joy? Ahura Mazda answered: '[It is he who tilling the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! kindly and piously gives to one of the faithful.]

35. 'He who tilling the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! would not kindly and piously give' to one of the faithful, he shall fall down into the darkness of Spenta Armaiti, down into the world of woe, the dismal realm, down into the house of hell.'

IV.

36.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall bury in the earth either the corpse of a dog or the corpse of a man, and if he shall not disinter it within half a year, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Five hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, five hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

37.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall bury in the earth either the corpse of a dog or the corpse of a man, and if he shall not disinter it within a year, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

38.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall bury in the earth either the corpse of a dog or the corpse of a man, and if he shall not disinter it within the second year, what is the penalty for it? What is the atonement for it? What is the cleansing from it?

39.Ahura Mazda answered: 'For that deed there is nothing that can pay, nothing that can atone, nothing that can cleanse from it; it is a trespass for which there is no atonement, for ever and ever.'

40.When is it so? ' It is so, if the sinner be a professor of the law of Mazda, or one who has been taught in it. But if he be not a professor of the law of Mazda, nor one who has been taught in it, then this law of Mazda takes his sin from him, if he confesses it and resolves never to commit again such forbidden deeds.

41.'The law of Mazda indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra I takes away from him who confesses it the bonds of his sin; it takes away (the sin of) breach of trust; it takes away (the sin of) murdering one of the faithful; it takes away (the sin of) burying a corpse; it takes away (the sin of) deeds for which there is no atonement; it takes away the heaviest penalties of sin; it takes away any sin that may be sinned

42.'In the same way the law of Mazda, O Spitama Zarathustra! cleanses the faithful from every evil thought, word, and deed, as a swift-rushing mighty wind cleanses the plain' So let all the deeds thou doest be henceforth good, O Zarathustra! a full atonement for thy sin is effected by means of the law of Mazda.'

FARGARD IV

CONTRACTS AND OUTRAGES

I (1-16).Contracts (see Introd. V, 17)

IIa (2).Classification of contracts;

IIb (3-4).Damages for breach of contract;

IIc (5-10).Kinsmen responsible;

IId (11-16).Penalties for breach of contract.

III (17-55).Outrages (see Introd. V, 18)

(18-21).Menaces;

(22-25).Assaults;

(26-29).Blows;

(30-33).Wounds;

(34-36).Wounds causing blood to flow;

(37-39).Broken bones;

(40-43).Manslaughter;

(46, 49 (bis)-55).False oaths

(47-49).Praise of physical weal

I.

1.He that does not restore (a thing lent), when it is asked for back again, steals the thing; he robs the man. So he does every day, every night, as long as he keeps in his house his neighbor's property, as though it were his own

IIa.

2.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I How many in number are thy contracts, O Ahura Mazda? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They are six in number. The first is the word-contract '; the second is the hand-contract; the third is the contract to the amount of a sheep; the fourth is the contract to the amount of an ox; the fifth is the contract to the amount of a man; the sixth is the contract to the amount of a field, a field in good land, a fruitful one, in good bearing'

IIb.

3.If a man make the word-contract a mere word, it shall be redeemed by the hand-contract; he shall give in pledge the amount of the hand contract

4.The hand-contract shall be redeemed by the sheep-contract; he shall give in pledge the amount of the sheep-contract. The sheep-contract shall be redeemed by the ox-contract; he shall give in pledge the amount of the ox-contract. The ox-contract shall be redeemed by the man-contract; he shall give in pledge the amount of the man-contract. The man-contract shall be redeemed by the field-contract; he shall give in pledge the amount of the field-contract.

IIc.

5.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the word-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabinazdistas answerable for the three hundred fold atonement.'

6.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the hand-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabinazdistas answerable for the six hundred-fold atonement'

7.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the sheep-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabinazdistas answerable for the seven hundred fold atonement.'

8.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the ox-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabftnazdistas answerable for the eight hundred fold atonement.'

9.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the man-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabftnazdistas answerable for the nine hundred-fold atonement.'

10.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the field-contract, how many are involved in his sin? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His sin makes his Nabinazdistas answerable for the thousand-fold atonement.'

IId.

11.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the word-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Three hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, three hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the hand-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Six hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, six hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

13.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the sheep-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seven hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seven hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

14.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the ox-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Eight hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, eight hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana'

15.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the man-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Nine hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, nine hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

16.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man break the field-contract, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

IIIIa.

17.If a man rise up to smite a man, it is an Agerepta. If a man come upon a man to smite him, it is an Avaoirista. If a man actually smite a man with evil aforethought, it is an Aredus. Upon the fifth Aredus he becomes a Peshotanu

18.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! He that committeth an Agerepta, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Five stripes with the Aspahe-astra, five stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the second Agerepta, ten stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ten stripes with the Sraosho-kararia; on the third, fifteen stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifteen stripes with the Sraosho-karana.

19.'On the fourth, thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the fifth, fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the sixth, sixty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, sixty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the seventh, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho- karana.'

20.If a man commit an Agerepta for the eighth time, without having atoned for the preceding, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

21. If a man commit an Agerepta and refuse to atone for it, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

22.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Avaoirista, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Ten stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ten stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the second Avaoirista, fifteen stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifteen stripes with the Sraosho-karana

23.'On the third, thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the fourth, fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the fifth, seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the sixth, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

24.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Avaairista for the seventh time, without having atoned for the preceding, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

25.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Avaairista, and refuse to atone for it, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

26.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Aredus, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Fifteen stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifteen stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

27. 'On the second Aredus, thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the third, fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the fourth, seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana; on the fifth, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

28.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Aredus for the sixth time, without having atoned for the preceding, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

29.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man commit an Aredus, and refuse to atone for it, what penalty shall he pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

30.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I If a man smite another and hurt him sorely, what is the penalty that he shall pay?

31.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana ; the second time, fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; the third time, seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana; the fourth time, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

32.If a man commit that deed for the fifth time, without having atoned for the preceding, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

33.If a man commit that deed and refuse to atone for it, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

34.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that the blood comes, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; the second time, seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana; the third time, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

35.If he commit that deed for the fourth time, without having atoned for the preceding, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

36.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that the blood comes, and if he refuse to atone for it, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

37.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that he breaks a bone, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana; the second time, ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

38.If he commit that deed for the third time, without having atoned for the preceding, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

39.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that he breaks a bone, and if he refuse to atone for it, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

40.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that he gives up the ghost, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

41.If he commit that deed again, without having atoned for the preceding, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

42.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man smite another so that he gives up the ghost, and if he refuse to atone for it, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

43.And they shall thenceforth in their doings walk after the way of holiness, after the word of holiness, after the ordinance of holiness.

Ile.

44.If men of the same faith, either friends or brothers, come to an agreement together, that one may obtain from the other, either goods, or a wife, or knowledge', let him who wants to have goods have them delivered to him; let him who wants to have a wife receive and wed her; let him who wants to have knowledge be taught the holy word.

45. He shall learn on, during the first part of the day and the last, during the first part of the night and the last, that his mind may be increased in knowledge and wax strong in holiness: so shall he sit up, giving thanks and praying to the gods, that he may be increased in knowledge: he shall rest during the middle part of the day, during the middle part of the night, and thus shall he continue until he can say all the words which former Aethrapaitis have said.

IIIb.

46. Before the water and the blazing fire, O Spitama Zarathustra! let no one make bold to deny having received from his neighbor the ox or the garment (he has received from him).

47. Verily I say it unto thee, O Spitama Zarathustra! the man who has a wife is far above him who begets no sons; he who keeps a house is far above him who has none; he who has children is far above the childless man; he who has riches is far above him who has none.

48. And of two men, he who fills himself with meat is filled with the good spirit much more than he who does not do so; the latter is all but dead; the former is above him by the worth of an Asperena', by the worth of a sheep, by the worth of an ox, by the worth of a man.

49. It is this man that can strive against the onsets of Asto-vidhotu; that can strive against the self-moving arrow; that can strive against the winter fiend, with thinnest garment on; that can strive against the wicked tyrant and smite him on the head; it is this man that can strive against the ungodly Ashemaogha who does not eat

49. The very first time when that deed has been done, without waiting until it is done again

50. Down there II the pain for that deed shall be as hard as any in this world: should one cut off the limbs from his perishable body with knives of brass, yet still worse shall it be.

51. Down there the pain for that deed shall be as hard as any in this world: should one nail his perishable body with nails of brass, yet still worse shall it be.

52. Down there the pain for that deed shall be as hard as any in this world: should one by force throw his perishable body headlong down a precipice a hundred times the height of a man, yet still worse shall it be

53. Down there the pain for that deed shall be as hard as any in this world: should one by force impale his perishable body, yet still worse shall it be.

54. Down there the pain for that deed shall be as hard as any in this world: to wit, that deed which is done, when a man, knowingly lying, confronts the brimstoned, golden, truth-knowing water with an appeal unto Rashnu and a lie unto Mithra

55. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! He who, knowingly lying, confronts the brimstoned, golden, truth-knowing water with an appeal unto Rashnu and a lie unto Mithra, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seven hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seven hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

FARGARD V

This chapter and the following ones, to the end of the twelfth, deal chiefly with uncleanness arising from the dead, and with the means of removing it from men and things. The subjects treated in this Fargard are as follows-

I (1-7).If a man defile the fire or the earth involuntarily, or unconsciously, it is no sin

II (8-9).Water and fire do not kill.

III (10-14).Disposal of the dead during winter.

IV (15-20).How the Dakhmas are cleansed by water from the heavens.

V (21-26).On the excellence of purity and of the law that shows how to recover it, when lost.

VI (27-38).On the defiling power of the Nasu being greater or less, according to the greater or less dignity of the being that dies.

VII (39-44).On the management of sacrificial implements defiled by the dead.

VIII (45-62).On the treatment of a woman who has been delivered of a still-born child; and what is to be done with her clothes.

Ia.

1. There dies a man in the depths of the vale: a bird takes flight from the top of the mountain down into the depths of the vale, and it eats up the corpse of the dead man there: then, up it flies from the depths of the vale to the top of the mountain: it flies to someone of the trees there, of the hard-wooded or the soft-wooded, and upon that tree it vomits, it deposits dung, it drops pieces from the corpse.

2. Now, lo! here is a man coming up from the depths of the vale to the top of the mountain; he comes to the tree whereon the bird is sitting; from that tree he wants to take wood for the fire. He fells the tree, he hews the tree, he splits it into logs, and then he lights it in the fire, the son of Ahura Mazda. What is the penalty that he shall pay?

3. Ahura Mazda answered: 'There is no sin upon a man for any dead matter that has been brought by dogs, by birds, by wolves, by winds, or by flies.

4. 'For were there sin upon a man for any dead matter that might have been brought by dogs, by birds, by wolves, by winds, or by flies, how soon this material world of mine would have in it only Peshotanus, shut out from the way of holiness, whose souls will cry and wail 1 I so numberless are the beings that die upon the face of the earth.'

Ib.

5. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Here is a man watering a cornfield. The water streams down the field; it streams again; it streams a third time; and the fourth time, a dog, a fox, or a wolf carries a corpse into the bed of the stream: what is the penalty that the man shall pay?

6. Ahura Mazda answered: ' There is no sin upon a man for any dead matter that has been brought by dogs, by birds, by wolves, by winds, or by flies.

7. 'For were there sin upon a man for any dead matter that might have been brought by dogs, by birds, by wolves, by winds, or by flies, how soon this material world of mine would have in it only Pesh6tanus, shut out from the way of holiness, whose souls will cry and wail! so numberless are the beings that die upon the face of the earth.'

Ila.

8. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Does water kill? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Water kills no man: Asto-vidhotu ties the noose around his neck, and, thus tied, Vaya I carries him off: then the flood takes him up, the flood takes him down, the flood throws him ashore; then birds feed upon him, and chance brings him here, or brings him there.'

Iib.

9. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Does fire kill? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Fire kills no man: Asto-vidhotu ties the noose around his neck, and, thus tied, Vaya carries him off. The fire burns up life and limb, and then chance brings him here, or brings him there.'

III.

10. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If the summer is past and the winter has come, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do? Ahura Mazda answered: 'In every house, in every borough, they shall raise three small houses for the dead.'

11. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How large shall be those houses for the dead? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Large enough not to strike the skull, or the feet, or the hands of the man, if he should stand erect, and hold out his feet, and stretch out his hands: such shall be, according to the law, the houses for the dead.

12. 'And they shall let the lifeless body lie there, for two nights, or for three nights, or a month long, until the birds begin to fly', the plants to grow, the floods to flow, and the wind to dry up the waters from off the earth.

13. 'And as soon as the birds begin to fly, the plants to grow, the floods to flow, and the wind to dry up the waters from off the earth, then the worshippers of Mazda shall lay down the dead (on the Dakhma) his eyes towards the sun.

14. 'If the worshippers of Mazda have not, within a year, laid down the dead (on the Dakhma), his eyes towards the sun, thou shalt prescribe for that trespass the same penalty as for the murder of one of the

faithful. [And there shall it lie] until the corpse has been rained on, until the Dakhma has been rained on, until the unclean remains have been rained on, until the birds have eaten up the corpse.'

IV.

15.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Is it true that thou, Ahura Mazda, sendest the waters from the sea Vouru-kasha down with the wind and with the clouds?

16.That thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow down to the corpses? that thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow down to the Dakhmas? that thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow down to the unclean remains? that thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow down to the bones? and that then thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow back unseen? that thou, Ahura Mazda, makest them flow back to the sea Puitika?

17.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is even so as thou hast said, O righteous Zarathustra! I, Ahura Mazda, send the waters from the sea Vouru-kasha down with the wind and with the clouds

18.'I, Ahura Mazda, make them stream down to the corpses; I, Ahura Mazda, make them stream down to the Dakhmas; I, Ahura Mazda, make them stream down to the unclean remains; I, Ahura Mazda, make them stream down to the bones; then. I, Ahura Mazda, make them flow back unseen; I, Ahura Mazda, make them flow back to the sea Puitika

19.'The waters stand there boiling, boiling up in the heart of the sea Puitika, and, when cleansed there, they run back again from the sea Puitika to the sea Vouru-kasha, towards the well-watered tree, whereon grow the seeds of my plants of every kind [by hundreds, by thousands, by hundreds of thousands].

20.'Those plants, I, Ahura Mazda, rain down upon the earth to bring food to the faithful, and fodder to the beneficent cow; to bring food to my people that they may live on it, and fodder to the beneficent cow.'

V.

21.'This is the best of all things, this is the fairest of all things, even as thou hast said, O righteous Zarathustra!' With these words the holy Ahura Mazda rejoiced the holy Zarathustra: 'Purity is for man, next to life, the greatest good, that purity that is procured by the law of Mazda to him who cleanses his own self with good thoughts, words, and deeds'.

22.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! This law, this fiend-destroying law of Zarathustra, by what greatness, goodness, and fairness is it great, good, and fair above all other utterances?

23.Ahura Mazda answered: ' As much above all other floods as is the sea Vouru-kasha, so much above all other utterances in greatness, goodness, and fairness is this law, this fiend-destroying law of Zarathustra.

24.'As much as a great stream flows swifter than a slender rivulet, so much above all other utterances in greatness, goodness, and fairness is this law, this fiend-destroying law of Zarathustra. 'As high as the great

tree stands above the small plants it overshadows, so high above all other utterances in greatness, goodness, and fairness is this law, this fiend-destroying law of Zarathustra.

25, 26. 'As high as heaven is above the earth that it compasses around, so high above all other utterances is this law, this fiend-destroying law of Mazda. '[Therefore], when the Ratu has been applied to, when the Sraosha-varez has been applied to; whether for a draona-service that has been undertaken or for one that has not been undertaken; whether for a draona that has been offered up, or for one that has not been offered up; whether for a draona that has been shared, or for one that has not been shared; the Ratu has power to remit him one-third of the penalty he had to pay: if he has committed any other evil deed, it is remitted by his repentance; if he has committed no other evil deed, he is absolved by his repentance for ever and ever.'

VI.

27. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If there be a number of men resting in the same place, on adjoining carpets, on adjoining pillows, be there two men near one another, or five, or fifty, or a hundred, close by one another; and of those people one happens to die; how many of them does the Drug Nasu envelope with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

28. Ahura Mazda answered: ' If the dead one be a priest, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the eleventh and defiles the ten 'If the dead one be a warrior, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the tenth and defiles the nine. 'If the dead one be a husbandman, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zathustra! she falls on the ninth and defiles the eight

29. 'If it be a shepherd's dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the eighth and defiles the seven. ' If it be a house dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the seventh and defiles the six.

30. 'If it be a Vohunazga dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the sixth and defiles the five. 'If it be a young dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the fifth and defiles the four.

31. 'If it be a Sukuruna dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the fourth and defiles the three. 'If it be a Gazu dog', the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the third and defiles the two

32. 'If it be an Aiwizu dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the second and defiles the next. 'If it be a Vizu dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the next, she defiles the next.'

33. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If it be an Urupi dog, how many of the creatures of the good spirit does it directly defile, how many does it indirectly defile in dying?

34. Ahura Mazda answered: ' An Urupi dog does neither directly nor indirectly defile any of the creatures of the good spirit, but him who smites and kills it; to him the uncleanness clings forever and ever.'

35. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If the dead one be a wicked, two-footed ruffian, an ungodly Ashemaogha, how many of the creatures of the good spirit does he directly defile, how many does he indirectly defile in dying?

36. Ahura Mazda answered: 'No more than a frog does whose venom is dried up, and that has been dead more than a year' Whilst alive, indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! that wicked, two-legged ruffian, that ungodly Ashemaogha, directly defiles the creatures of the good spirit, and indirectly defiles them

37. 'Whilst alive he smites the water; whilst alive he blows out the fire; whilst alive he carries off the cow; whilst alive he smites the faithful man with a deadly blow, that parts the soul from the body'; not so will he do when dead.

38. 'Whilst alive, indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! that wicked, two-legged ruffian, that ungodly Ashemaogha, never ceases depriving the faithful man of his food, of his clothing, of his house, of his bed, of his vessels; not so will he do when dead.'

VII.

39. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When into our houses here below we have brought the fire, the baresma, the cups, the Haoma, and the mortar, O holy Ahura Mazda! if it come to pass that either a dog or a man dies there, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

40. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Out of the house, O Spitama Zarathustra! shall they take the fire, the baresma, the cups, the Haoma, and the mortar; they shall take the dead one out to the proper place whereto, according to the law, corpses must be brought, to be devoured there.'

41. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When shall they bring back the fire into the house wherein the man has died?

42. Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wait for nine nights in winter, for a month in summer, and then they shall bring back the fire to the house wherein the man has died.'

43. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! And if they shall bring back the fire to the house wherein the man has died, within the nine nights, or within the month, what penalty shall they pay?

44. Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall be Peshotanus: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

VIII.

45. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If in the house of a worshipper of Mazda there be a woman with child, and if being a month gone, or two, or three, or four, or five, or six, or seven, or eight, or nine, or ten months gone, she bring forth a still-born child, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

46 (139). Ahura Mazda answered: 'The place in that Mazdean house whereof the ground is the cleanest and the driest, and the least passed through by flocks and herds, by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful;'

47. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

48. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty paces from the fire; thirty paces from the water; thirty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma; three paces from the faithful;

49. 'On that place shall the worshippers of Mazda erect an enclosure, and therein shall they establish her with food, therein shall they establish her with clothes.'

50. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What is the food that the woman shall first take?

51. Ahura Mazda answered: 'She shall drink gomez mixed with ashes, three cups of it, or six, or nine, to wash over the grave within her womb.'

52. 'Afterwards she may drink boiling milk of mares, cows, sheep, or goats, with pap or without pap; she may take cooked meat without water, bread without water, and wine without water.'

53. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long shall she remain so? How long shall she live only on that sort of meat, bread, and wine?

54. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Three nights long shall she remain so; three nights long shall she live on that sort of meat, bread, and wine. Then, when three nights have passed, she shall wash her body, she shall wash her clothes, with gomez and water, by the nine holes, and thus shall she be clean.'

55. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long shall she remain so? How long, after the three nights have gone, shall she sit confined, and live separated from the rest of the worshippers of Mazda, as to her seat, her food, and her clothing?

56. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Nine nights long shall she remain so: nine nights long, after the three nights have gone, shall she sit confined, and live separated from the rest of the worshippers of Mazda, as to her seat, her food, and her clothing. Then, when the nine nights have gone, she shall wash her body, and cleanse her clothes with gomez and water.'

57. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can those clothes, when once washed and cleansed, ever be used either by a Zaotar, or by a Havanan, or by an Atare-vakhsha, or by a Frabaretar, or by an Abered, or by an Asnitar, or by a Rathwiskar, or by a Sraoshi-varez, or by any priest, warrior, or husbandman?

58. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Never can those clothes, even when washed and cleansed, be used either by a Zaotar, or by a Hivanan, or by an Atare-vakhsha, or by a Frabaretar, or by an Abered, or by an Asnitar, or by a Rathwiskar, or by a Sraoshi-varez, or by any priest, warrior, or husband man.'

59. 'But if there be in a Mazdean house a woman who is in her sickness, or a man who has become unfit for work, and who must sit in the place of infirmity, those clothes shall serve for their coverings and for their sheets, until they can withdraw and move their hands'

60. 'Ahura Mazda, indeed, does not allow us to waste anything of value that we may have, not even so much as an Asperena's weight of thread, not even so much as a maid lets fall in spinning.'

61. 'Whosoever throws any clothing on a dead body, even so much as a maid lets fall in spinning, is not a pious man whilst alive, nor shall he, when dead, have a place in the happy realm'

62. 'He shall go away into the world of the fiends, into that dark world, made of darkness, the offspring of darkness. To that world, to the dismal realm, you are delivered by your own doings, by your own souls, O sinners!'

FARGARD VI

I (1-9).How long the earth remains unclean, when defiled by the dead.

II (10-25).Penalties for defiling the ground with dead matter.

III (26-41).Purification of the different sorts of water, when defiled by the dead.

IV (42-43).Purification of the Haoma.

V (44-51).The place for corpses; the Dakhmas.

I.

1.How long shall the ground lie fallow whereon dogs or men have died? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A year long shall the ground lie fallow whereon dogs or men have died, O holy Zarathustra

2.'A year long shall no worshipper of Mazda sow or water that part of the ground whereon dogs or men have died; he may sow as he likes the rest of the ground; he may water it as he likes.

3.'If within the year they shall sow or water the ground whereon dogs or men have died, the sin is the same as if they had brought dead matter to the water, to the earth, and to the plants.'

4.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If worshippers of Mazda shall sow or water, within the year, the ground whereon dogs or men have died, what is the penalty that they shall pay?

5.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They are Pesho-tanus: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

6.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If worshippers of Mazda want to make the ground fit to be tilled again a, that they may water it, sow it, and plough it, what shall they do?

7.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall look on the ground for any bones, hair, flesh, dung, or blood that may be there.'

8.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If they shall not look on the ground for any bones, hair, flesh, dung, or blood that may be there, what is the penalty that they shall pay?

9.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They are Pesho-tanus: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

II.

10.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as the top joint of the little finger, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

11.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as the top joint of the fore-finger, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

13.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho karana.'

14.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as the top joint of the middle finger, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

15.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

16.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as a finger or as a rib, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

17.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

18.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as two fingers or as two ribs, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

19.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Pesho- tanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

20.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as an arm-bone or as a thigh-bone, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

21.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Four hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, four hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

22.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground a bone of a dead dog, or of a dead man, as large as a man's skull, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

23.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Six hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, six hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

24.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw on the ground the whole body of a dead dog, or of a dead man, and if grease or marrow flow from it on to the ground, what penalty shall he pay?

25.Ahura Mazda answered: 'A thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

III.

26.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a worshipper of Mazda, walking, or running, or riding, or driving, come upon a corpse in a stream of running water, what shall he do?

27.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Taking off his shoes, putting off his clothes, boldly, O Zarathustra! he shall enter the river, and take the dead out of the water; he shall go down into the water ankle-deep, knee-deep, waist-deep, or a man's full depth, till he can reach the dead body.'

28.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If, however, the body be already falling to pieces and rotting, what shall the worshipper of Mazda do?

29.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He shall draw out of the water as much of the corpse as he can grasp with both hands, and he shall lay it down on the dry ground; no sin attaches to him for any bone, hair, grease, flesh, dung, or blood that may drop back into the water.'

30.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What part of the water in a pond does the Drug Nasu defile with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

31.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Six steps on each of the four sides. As long as the corpse has not been taken out of the water, so long shall that water be unclean and unfit to drink. They shall, therefore, take the corpse out of the pond, and lay it down on the dry ground.'

32.'And of the water they shall draw off the half, or the third, or the fourth, or the fifth part, according as they are able; and after the corpse has been taken out and the water has been drawn off, the rest of the water is clean, and both cattle and men may drink of it at their pleasure, as before.'

33.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What part of the water in a well does the Drug Nasu defile with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

34.Ahura Mazda answered: 'As long as the corpse has not been taken out of the water, so long shall that water be unclean and unfit to drink. They shall, therefore, take the corpse out of the well, and lay it down on the dry ground.'

35.'And of the water in the well they shall draw off the half, or the third, or the fourth, or the fifth part, according as they are able; and after the corpse has been taken out and the water has been drawn off, the rest of the water is clean, and both cattle and men may drink of it at their pleasure, as before.'

36.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What part of a sheet of snow or hail does the Drug Nasu defile with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

37. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Three steps on each of the four sides. As long as the corpse has not been taken out of the water, so long shall that water be unclean and unfit to drink. They shall, therefore, take the corpse out of the water, and lay it down on the dry ground.'

38. 'After the corpse has been taken out, and the snow or the hail has melted, the water is clean, and both cattle and men may drink of it at their pleasure, as before.'

39. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What part of the water of a running stream does the Drug Nasu defile with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

40. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Three steps down the stream, nine steps up the stream, six steps across. As long as the corpse has not been taken out of the water, so long shall the water be unclean and unfit to drink. They shall, therefore, take the corpse out of the water, and lay it down on the dry ground.'

41. 'After the corpse has been taken out and the stream has flowed three times, the water is clean, and both cattle and men may drink of it at their pleasure, as before.'

IV.

42. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the Haoma that has been touched by the corpse of a dead dog, or the corpse of a dead man, be made clean again?

43. Ahura Mazda answered: 'It can, O holy Zarathustra! If it has been strained for the sacrifice, no corpse that has been brought unto it, makes corruption or death enter it. If it has not been strained for the sacrifice, the stem is defiled the length of four fingers. That length of stem shall be buried in the ground, in the middle of the house, for a year long. When the year is passed, the faithful may drink of its juice at their pleasure, as before.'

V.

44. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Whither shall we bring, where shall we lay the bodies of the dead, O Ahura Mazda?

45. Ahura Mazda answered: 'On the highest summits, where they know there are always corpse-eating dogs and corpse-eating birds, O holy Zarathustra!'

46. 'There shall the worshippers of Mazda fasten the corpse, by the feet and by the hair, with brass, stones, or lead, lest the corpse-eating dogs and the corpse-eating birds shall go and carry the bones to the water and to the trees.'

47. 'If they shall not fasten the corpse, so that the corpse-eating dogs and the corpse-eating birds may go and carry the bones to the water and to the trees, what is the penalty that they shall pay?'

48. Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall be Peshotanus: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

49. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Whither shall we bring, where shall we lay the bones of the dead, O Ahura Mazda?

50. Ahura Mazda answered: 'The worshippers of Mazda shall erect a building out of the reach of the dog, of the fox, and of the wolf, and wherein rain-water cannot stay'

51. 'Such a building shall they erect, if they can afford it, with stones, mortar, and earth; if they cannot afford it, they shall lay down the dead man on the ground, on his carpet and his pillow, clothed with the light of heaven, and beholding the sun.'

FARGARD VII

I (1-5). How long after death the Nasu falls upon the dead.

II (6-9). How far the defiling power of the Nasu extends.

III (10-22). Cleansing of clothes defiled by the dead.

IV (23-24). Eating of corpses an abomination.

V (25-27). Bringing corpses to fire or water an abomination.

VI (28-35). Cleansing of wood and corn defiled by the dead.

VII a (36-40). Physicians; their probation.

VII b (40-44). Their fees.

VIII (45-59). Purification of the earth, of the Dakhmas. The Dakhmas and the Daevas.

IX (60-72). Treatment of a woman who has brought forth a still-born child.

X (73-75). Cleansing of vessels defiled by the dead.

XI (76). Cleansing of the cow.

XII (77). Unclean libations.

This chapter would offer tolerable unity, but for a digression on medicine, which would be better placed as an introduction to the last three chapters. Sections II and IX, parts of which have already been found in Fargard V, are more suitably placed here. This chapter, as a whole, deals with the action of the Drue Nasu, from the moment she takes hold of the corpse, and shows how and when the several objects she has defiled become clean, namely, clothes, wood, corn, earth, women, vessels, and cows.

I.

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: O Ahura Mazda, most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When a man dies, at what moment does the Drug Nasu rush upon him?'

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Directly after death, as soon as the soul has left the body, O Spitama Zarathustra! the Drug Nasu comes and rushes upon him, from the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

3. 'On him she stays until the dog has seen the corpse or eaten it up, or until the flesh-eating birds have taken flight towards it. When the dog has seen it or eaten it up, or when the flesh-eating birds have taken flight towards it, then the Drug Nasu rushes away to the regions of the north in the shape of a ' raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

4. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If the man has been killed by a dog, or by a wolf, or by witchcraft, or by the artifices of hatred or by falling down a precipice, or by the law, or by a murderer, or by the noose, how long after death does the Drug Nasu come and rush upon the dead?

5. Ahura Mazda answered: 'At the next watch after death, the Drug Nasu comes and rushes upon the dead, from the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.'

II.

6. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If there be a number of men resting in the same place, on adjoining carpets, on adjoining pillows, be there two men near one another, or five, or fifty, or a hundred, close by one another; and of those people one happens to die; how many of them does the Drug Nasu envelope with infection, pollution, and uncleanness?

7. Ahura Mazda answered: 'If the dead one be a priest, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the eleventh and defiles the ten. ' If the dead one be a warrior, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the tenth and defiles the nine. ' If the dead one be a husbandman, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the ninth and defiles the eight.

8. 'If it be a shepherd's dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the eighth and defiles the seven. If it be a house dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the seventh and defiles the six.

9. If it be a Vohunazga dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the sixth and defiles the five. 'If it be a young dog, the Drug Nasu rushes forth, O Spitama Zarathustra! she falls on the fifth and defiles the four' 'those clothes shall serve for their coverings and for their sheets.'

III.

10. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What part of his bedding and pillow does the Drug Nasu defile with infection, uncleanness, and pollution?

11. Ahura Mazda answered: 'The Drug Nasu defiles with infection, uncleanness, and pollution the upper sheet and the inner garment'.

12. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can that garment be made clean, O holy Ahura Mazda! that has been touched by the carcass of a dog or the corpse of a man?

13. Ahura Mazda answered: 'It can, O holy Zarathustra! ' How so? 'If, indeed, the garment has been defiled with seed, or sweat, or dirt, or vomit, the worshippers of Mazda shall rend it to pieces, and bury it under the ground

14. ' But if it has not been defiled with seed, or sweat, or dirt, or vomit, then the worshippers of Mazda shall wash it with gomez.

15. ' If it be leather, they shall wash it with gomez three times, they shall rub it with earth three times, they shall wash it with water three times, and afterwards they shall expose it to the air for three months at the window of the house. ' If it be woven cloth, they shall wash it with gomez six times, they shall rub it with earth six times, they shall wash it with water six times, and afterwards they shall expose it to the air for six months at the window of the house.

16. 'The spring named Ardvi Sura, O Spitama Zarathustra! that spring of mine, purifies the seed in man, the fruit in a woman's womb, the milk in a woman's breast.'

17. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can those clothes, when once washed and cleansed, ever be used either by a Zaotar, or by a Hivanan, or by an Atare-vakhsha, or by a Frabaretar, or by an Abered, or by an Asnitar, or by a Rathwiskar, or by a Sraoshi-varez, or by any priest, warrior, or husband man?

18. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Never can those clothes, even when washed and cleansed, be used either by a Zaotar, or by a Hivanan, or by an Atare-vakhsha, or by a Frabaretar, or by an Abered, or by an Asnitar, or by a Rathwiskar, or by a Sraoshi-varez, or by any priest, warrior, or husbandman.

19. 'But if there be in a Mazdean house a woman who is in her sickness, or a man who has become unfit for work, and who must sit in the place of infirmity, those clothes shall serve for their coverings and for their sheets, until they can withdraw and move their hands.

20. 'Ahura Mazda, indeed, does not allow us to waste anything of value that we may have, not even so much as an Asperena's weight of thread, not even so much as a maid lets fall in spinning.

21. ' Whosoever throws any clothing on a dead body, even so much as a maid lets fall in spinning, is not a pious man whilst alive, nor shall he, when dead, have a place in the happy realm.

22. 'He shall go away into the world of the fiends, into that dark world, made of darkness, the offspring of darkness. To that world, to the dismal realm, you are delivered by your own doings, by your own souls, O sinners!'

IV.

23. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can he be clean again who has eaten of the carcass of a dog or of the carcass of a man?

24. Ahura Mazda answered: 'He cannot, O holy Zarathustra! His burrow shall be dug out, his life shall be torn out, his bright eyes shall be put out; the Drug Nasu falls upon him, takes hold of him even to the end of the nails, and he is unclean, thenceforth, for ever and ever'

V.

25.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I Can he be clean again, O holy Ahura Mazda! who has brought a corpse with filth into the waters, or unto the fire, and made either unclean?

26.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He cannot, O holy Zarathustra! Those wicked ones it is, those men turned to Nasus, that most increase gnats and locusts'; those wicked ones it is, those men turned to Nasus, that most increase the grass-destroying drought.

27.' Those wicked ones it is, those men turned to Nasus, that increase most the power of the winter, produced by the fiends, the cattle-killing, thick-snowing, overflowing, the piercing fierce, mischievous winter. Upon them comes and rushes the Drug Nasu, she takes hold of them even to the end of the nails, and they are unclean, thenceforth, forever and ever'

VI.

28.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I Can the wood be made clean, O holy Ahura Mazda! whereunto dead matter has been brought from a dead dog, or from a dead man?

29.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It can, O holy Zarathustra!' How so? 'If the Nasu has not yet been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds ', they shall lay down, apart on the ground, the wood on the length of a Vitasti all around the dead matter, if the wood be dry; on the length of a Frarathni all around, if it be wet; then they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean

30.'But if the Nasu has already been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds, they shall lay down, apart on the ground, the wood on the length of a Frarathni all around the dead matter, if the wood be dry; on the length of a Frabazu s all around, if it be wet; then they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean.

31.'This is the quantity of wood around the dead matter, that they shall lay down, apart on the ground, according as the wood is dry or wet; according as it is hard or soft; they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean.'

32.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the corn or the fodder be made clean, O holy Ahura Mazda! whereunto dead matter has been brought from a dead dog, or from a dead man?

33. Ahura Mazda answered:'It can, O holy Zarathustra!' How so? ' If the Nasu has not yet been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds, they shall lay down, apart on the ground, the corn on the length of a Frarathni all around the dead matter, if the corn be dry; on the length of a Frabazu all around, if it be wet; then they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean.

34.'But if the Nasu has already been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds, they shall lay down, apart on the ground, the corn on the length of a Frabazu all around the dead matter, if the corn be dry; on the length of a Vibazu all around, if it be wet; then they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean.

35.'This is the quantity of corn around the dead matter, that they shall lay down, apart on the ground, according as the corn is dry or wet; according as it is sown or not sown; according as it is reaped or not

reaped; according as it is ground or not ground; according as it is (kneaded) or not kneaded; they shall sprinkle it once over with water, and it shall be clean.'

VIIa.

36.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a worshipper of Mazda want to practice the art of healing, on whom shall he first prove his skill? on worshippers of Mazda or on worshippers of the Daevas?

37.Ahura Mazda answered: 'On worshippers of the Daevas shall he first prove himself rather than on worshippers of Mazda. If he treat with the knife a worshipper of the Daevas and he die; if he treat with the knife a second worshipper of the Daevas and he die; if he treat with the knife for the third time a worshipper of the Daevas and he die, he is unfit to practice the art of healing for ever and ever.

38.'Let him therefore never attend any worshipper of Mazda; let him never treat with the knife any worshipper of Mazda, nor wound him with the knife. If he shall ever attend any worshipper of Mazda, if he shall ever treat with the knife any worshipper of Mazda, nor wound him with the knife, he shall pay for it the same penalty as is paid for willful murder

39.'If he treat with the knife a worshipper of the Daevas and he recover; if he treat with the knife a second worshipper of the Daevas and he recover; if for the third time he treat with the knife a worshipper of the Daevas and he recover; then he is fit to practise the art of healing for ever and ever

40.'He may henceforth at his will attend worshippers of Mazda; he may at his will treat with the knife worshippers of Mazda, and heal them with the knife.

VIIb.

41.'A healer shall heal a priest for a holy blessing; he shall heal the master of a house for the value of an ox of low value; he shall heal the lord of a borough for the value of an ox of average value; he shall heal the lord of a town for the value of an ox of high value; he shall heal the lord of a province for the value of a chariot and four

42.'He shall heal the wife of the master of a house for the value of a she-ass; he shall heal the wife of the lord of a borough for the value of a cow; he shall heal the wife of the lord of a town for the value of a mare; he shall heal the wife of the lord of a province for the value of a she-camel.

43. 'He shall heal the son of the lord of a borough for the value of an ox of high value; he shall heal an ox of high value for the value of an ox of average value; he shall heal an ox of average value for that of an ox of low value; he shall heal an ox of low value for the value of a sheep; he shall heal a sheep for the value of a meal of meat '

44.'If several healers offer themselves together, O Spitama Zarathustra! namely, one who heals with the knife, one who heals with herbs, and one who heals with the holy word, it is this one who will best drive away sickness from the body of the faithful'

VIII.

45.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long after the corpse of a dead man has been laid down on the ground, clothed with the light of heaven and beholding the sun, is the ground itself again?

46.Ahura Mazda answered: 'When the corpse of a dead man has lain on the ground for a year, clothed with the light of heaven, and beholding the sun, then the ground is itself again, O holy Zarathustra!'

47.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long after the corpse of a dead man has been buried in the earth, is the earth itself again?

48. Ahura Mazda answered: 'When the corpse of a dead man has lain buried in the earth for fifty years, O Spitama Zarathustra I then the earth is itself again.'

49.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long after the corpse of a dead man has been laid down on a Dakhma, is the ground, whereon the Dakhma stands, itself again?

50.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Not until the dust of the corpse, O Spitama Zarathustra I has mingled with the dust of the earth Urge every one in the material world, O Spitama Zarathustra! to pull down Dakhmas

51.'He who should pull down Dakhmas, even so much thereof as the size of his own body, his sins in thought, word, and deed are remitted as they would be by a Patet; his sins in thought, word, and deed are atoned for

52.' Not for his soul shall the two spirits wage war with one another'; and when he enters the blissful world, the stars, the moon, and the sun shall rejoice in him; and I, Ahura Mazda, shall rejoice in him, saying: "Hail, O man! thou who hast just passed from the decaying world into the undecaying one!"

55.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Where are the fiends? Where are the worshippers of the fiends? What is the place whereon the troops of fiends rush together? What is the place whereon the troops of fiends come rushing along? What is the place whereon they rush together to kill their fifties and their hundreds, their hundreds and their thousands, their thousands and their tens of thousands, their tens of thousands and their myriads of myriads?

56.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Those Dakhmas that are built upon the face of the earth, O Spitama Zarathustra! and whereon are laid the corpses of dead men, that is the place where the fiends are, that is the place whereon the troops of fiends rush together, that is the place whereon the troops of fiends come rushing along, that is the place whereon they rush together to kill their fifties and their hundreds, their hundreds and their thousands, their thousands and their tens of thousands, their tens of thousands and their myriads of myriads.

57.On those Dakhmas, O Spitama Zarathustra! those fiends take food and void filth, (eating up corpses) in the same way as you, men, in the material world, eat cooked meal and cooked meat. It is, as it were, the smell of their feeding that you smell there, O men!

58.'Thus the fiends revel on there, until that stench is rooted in the Dakhmas. Thus from the Dakhmas arise the infection of diseases, itch, hot fever, humors, cold fever, rickets, and hair untimely white. There death has most power on man, from the hour when the sun is down.

59. 'And if there be people of evil spirit who do not seek for better spirit, the Gainis make those diseases grow stronger by a third, on their thighs, on their hands, on their plaited hair.'

IX.

60. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If in the house of a worshipper of Mazda there be a woman with child, and if being a month gone, or two, or three, or four, or five, or six, or seven, or eight, or nine, or ten months gone, she bring forth a still-born child, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

61. Ahura Mazda answered: 'The place in that Mazdean house whereof the ground is the cleanest and the driest, and the least passed through by flocks and herds, by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful'

62. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

63. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty paces from the fire; thirty paces from the water; thirty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma; three paces from the faithful'

64. 'On that place shall the worshippers of Mazda erect an enclosure, and therein shall they establish her with food, therein shall they establish her with clothes.'

65. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What is the food that the woman shall first take?

66. Ahura Mazda answered: 'She shall drink gomez mixed with ashes, three cups of it, or six, or nine, to wash over the grave in her womb.'

67. 'Afterwards she may drink boiling milk of mares, cows, sheep, or goats, with pap or without pap; she may take cooked meat without water, bread without water, and wine without water.'

68. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How long shall she remain so? How long shall she live only on that sort of meat, bread, and wine?

69. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Three nights long shall she remain so; three nights long shall she live on that sort of meat, bread, and wine. Then, when three nights have passed, she shall wash her body, she shall wash her clothes, with gomez and water, by the nine holes, and thus shall she be clean.'

70. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! But if fever befall her unclean body, if that twofold plague, hunger and thirst, befall her, may she be allowed to drink water?

71. Ahura Mazda answered: 'She may; the first thing for her is to have her life saved. Having been allowed by one of the holy men, by a holy faithful man, who knows the holy knowledge she shall drink of the strength-giving water. But you, worshippers of Mazda, fix ye the penalty for it. The Ratu being applied to, the Sraoshi-varez being applied to, shall prescribe the penalty to be paid.'

72. What is the penalty to be paid? Ahura Mazda answered: 'The deed is that of a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

X.

73.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the eating vessels be made clean that have been touched by the carcass of a dog, or by the corpse of a man?

74.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They can, O holy Zarathustra! ' How so? ' If they be of gold, you shall wash them once with gomez, you shall rub them once with earth, you shall wash them once with water, and they shall be clean. ' If they be of silver, you shall wash them twice with gomez, you shall rub them twice with earth, you shall wash them twice with water, and they shall be clean.

75.' If they be of brass, you shall wash them thrice with gomez, you shall rub them thrice with earth, you shall wash them thrice with water, and they shall be clean. ' If they be of steel, you shall wash them four times with gomez, you shall rub them four times with earth, you shall wash them four times with water, and they shall be clean. ' If they be of stone, you shall wash them six times with gomez, you shall rub them six times with earth, you shall wash them six times with water, and they shall be clean. 'If they be of earth, of wood, or of clay, they are unclean for ever and ever'

XI.

76.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the cow be made clean that has eaten of the carcass of a dog, or of the corpse of a man?

77.Ahura Mazda answered: 'She can, O holy Zarathustra! The priest shall not, within a year, take from her to the baresma neither the milk and cheese that accompany the libation, nor the meat that accompanies the libation. When a year has passed, then the faithful may eat of her as before'

XII.

78.Who is he, O holy Ahura Mazda! who, with a godly intent, with a godly wish, goes astray from the ways of God? Who is he who, with a godly intent, falls into the ways of the Drug?

79. Ahura Mazda answered: 'The one who, with a godly intent, with a godly wish, goes astray from the ways of God; the one who with a godly intent falls into the ways of the Drug, is he who offers up for libation water defiled by the dead; or who offers up libations in the dead of the night.'

FARGARD VIII

I (1-3).Purification of the house where a man has died.

II (4-13).Funerals.

III (14-22).Purification of the ways along which the corpse has been carried.

IV (23-25).No clothes to be wasted on a corpse.

V (26-32).Unlawful lusts.

VI (33-34).A corpse when dried up does not contaminate.

VII (35-72).Purification of the man defiled by the dead.

VIII (73-80).Purification of the fire defiled by the dead.

IX (81-96).The Bahram fire.

X (97-107).Purification in the wilderness. This chapter, putting aside section V, may be entitled: Funerals and Purification. Logical order may easily be introduced into it, by arranging the sections as follows: I, IV, II, III, VI, VII, X, VIII, IX.

I.

1.If a dog or a man die under the timberwork of a house or the wattling's of a hut, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

2.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall look for a Dakhma, they shall look for a Dakhma all around. If they find it easier to remove the dead than to remove the house, they shall take out the dead, they shall let the house stand, and shall perfume it with Urvasni, or Vohu-gaona, or Vohu-kereti, or Hadha-naepata, or any other sweet-smelling plant

3. 'If they find it easier to remove the house than to remove the dead, they shall take away the house, they shall let the dead lie on the spot, and shall perfume the house with Urvasni, or Vohu-gaona, or Vohu-kereti, or Hadha-naepata, or any other sweet-smelling plant.'

II.

4.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If in the house of a worshipper of Mazda a dog or a man happens to die, and it is raining, or snowing, or blowing, or the darkness is coming on, when flocks and men lose their way, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

5.Ahura Mazda answered: 'The place in that house whereof the ground is the cleanest and the driest, and the least passed through by flocks and herds, by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful

6.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

7.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty paces from the fire; thirty paces from the water; thirty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma; three paces from the faithful

8.'On that place they shall dig a grave, half a foot deep if the earth be hard, half the height of a man if it be soft; [they shall cover the surface of the grave with ashes or cowdung]; they shall cover the surface of it with dust of bricks, of stones, or of dry earth

9.'And they shall let the lifeless body lie there, for two nights, or three nights, or a month long, until the birds begin to fly, the plants to grow, the floods to flow, and the wind to dry up the waters from off the earth.

10.'And when the birds begin to fly, the plants to grow, the floods to flow, and the wind to dry up the waters from off the earth, then the worshippers of Mazda shall make a breach in the wall of the house, and they shall call for two men, strong and skillful, and those, having stripped their clothes off, shall take the body to the building of clay, stones, and mortar', raised on a place where they know there are always corpse-eating dogs and corpse-eating birds.

11.'Afterwards the corpse-bearers shall sit down, three paces from the dead; then the holy Ratu shall proclaim to the worshippers of Mazda thus: "Let the worshippers of Mazda here bring the urine wherewith the corpse-bearers there shall wash their hair and their bodies! " '

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the urine wherewith the corpse-bearers shall wash. their hair and their bodies? Is it of sheep or of oxen? Is it of man or of woman?

13. Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is of sheep or of oxen; not of man nor of woman, except these two: the nearest kinsman (of the dead) or his nearest kinswoman. The worshippers of Mazda shall therefore procure the urine wherewith the corpse-bearers shall wash their hair and their bodies.'

III.

14.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the way, whereon the carcasses of dogs or corpses of men have been carried, be passed through again by flocks and herds, by men and women, by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful?

15.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It cannot be passed through again by flocks and herds, nor by men and women, nor by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, nor by the consecrated bundles of baresma, nor by the faithful.

16.'You shall therefore cause the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, to go three times through that way. When either the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, is brought there, then the Drug Nasu flies away to the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

17.'If the dog goes unwillingly, they shall cause the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, to go six times through that way. When either the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, is brought there, then the Drug Nasu flies away to the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and, tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

18.'If the dog goes unwillingly, they shall cause the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, to go nine times through that way. When either the yellow dog with four eyes, or the white dog with yellow ears, has been brought there, then the Drug Nasu flies away to the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

19.'An Athravan shall first go along the way and shall say aloud these fiend-smiting words: "Yatha ahu vairyo: the will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works

in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor.

20. 'Kem ni mazda: whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda while the hate of the fiend is grasping me? Whom but thy Atar and Vohu-mano, by whose work the holy world goes on? Reveal to me the rules of thy law! ' Ke verethrem ga: who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances? Teach me clearly thy rules for this world and for the next, that Sraosha may come with Vohu-mano, and help whomsoever thou pleasest.

21. 'Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Rush away, O Drug! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!"

22. 'Then the worshippers of Mazda may at their will bring by those ways sheep and oxen, men and women, and Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, the consecrated bundles of baresma, and the faithful. 'The worshippers of Mazda may afterwards I prepare meals with meat and wine in that house; it shall be clean, and there will be no sin, as before.'

IV.

23. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw clothes, either of skin or woven, upon a dead body, enough to cover the feet, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Four hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, four hundred stripes with the Sraoshe-karana.'

24. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw clothes, either of skin or woven, upon a dead body, enough to cover both legs, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Six hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, six hundred stripes with the Sraoshe-karana.'

25. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall throw clothes, either of skin or woven, upon a dead body, enough to cover the whole body, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraoshe-karana.'

V.

26. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man involuntarily emits his seed, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Eight hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, eight hundred stripes with the Sraoshe-karana.'

27. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man voluntarily emits his seed, what is the penalty for it? What is the atonement for it? What is the cleansing from it? Ahura Mazda answered: 'For that deed there is nothing that can pay, nothing that can atone, nothing that can cleanse from it; it is a trespass for which there is no atonement, for ever and ever.'

28. When is it so? ' It is so, if the sinner be a professor of the law of Mazda, or one who has been taught in it. But if he be not a professor of the law of Mazda, nor one who has been taught in it, then this law of

Mazda takes his sin from him, if he confesses it and resolves never to commit again such forbidden deeds.

29.'The law of Mazda indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! takes away from him who confesses it the bonds of his sin; it takes away (the sin of) breach of trust; it takes away (the sin of) murdering one of the faithful; it takes away (the sin of) burying a corpse; it takes away (the sin of) deeds for which there is no atonement; it takes away the heaviest penalties of sin; it takes away any sin that may be sinned.

30.'In the same way the law of Mazda, O Spitama Zarathustra I cleanses the faithful from every evil thought, word, and deed, as a swift rushing mighty wind cleanses the plain. ' So let all the deeds thou doesn't be henceforth good, O Zarathustra! a full atonement for thy sin is effected by means of the law of Mazda.'

31.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who is the man that is a Daeva? Who is he that is a worshipper of the Daevas? that is a male paramour of the Daevas? that is a female paramour of the Daevas? that is a she-Daeva? that is in his inmost self a Daeva? that is in his whole being a Daeva? Who is he that is a Daeva before he dies, and becomes one of the unseen Daevas after death?

32.Ahura Mazda answered: 'The man that lies with mankind as man lies with womankind, or as woman lies with mankind, is the man that is a Daeva; this one is the man that is a worshipper of the Daevas, that is a male paramour of the Daevas, that is a female paramour of the Daevas, that is a she-Daeva; this is the man that is in his inmost self a Daeva, that is in his whole being a Daeva; this is the man that is a Daeva before he dies, and becomes one of the unseen Daevas after death: so is he, whether he has lain with mankind as mankind, or as womankind.'

VI.

33.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Shall the man be clean who has touched a corpse that has been dried up and dead more than a year?

34.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He shall. The dry mingles not with the dry. Should the dry mingle with the dry, how soon this material world of mine 'would have in it only Peshotanus, shut out from the way of holiness, and whose souls will cry and wail! so numberless are the beings that die upon the face of the earth.'

VII.

35.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can the man be made clean that has touched the corpse of a dog or the corpse of a man?

36.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He can, O holy Zarathustra! ' How so? ' If the Nasu has already been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds, he shall cleanse his body with gomez and water, and he shall be clean.

37.'If the Nasu has not yet been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs, or by the corpse-eating birds, then the worshippers of Mazda shall dig three holes in the ground, and he shall thereupon wash his body with gomez, not with water. They shall then lift and bring my dog, they shall bring him (thus shall it be done and not otherwise) in front of the man

38.'The worshippers of Mazda shall dig three other holes 6 in the ground, and he shall thereupon wash his body with gomez, not with water. They shall then lift and bring my dog, they shall bring him (thus shall it be done and not otherwise) in front of the man. Then they shall wait until he is dried. even to the last hair on the top of his head.

39.'They shall dig three more holes in the ground, and he shall thereupon wash his body with water, not with gomez.

40.' He shall first wash his hands; if his hands be not first washed, he makes the whole of his body unclean. When he has washed his hands three times, after his hands have been washed, thou shalt sprinkle with water the forepart of his skull.'

41.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the forepart of the skull, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'In front, between the brows, the Drug Nasu rushes.'

42.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach in front between the brows, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' On the back part of the skull the Drug Nasu rushes.'

43.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the back part of the skull, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' In front, on the jaws, the Drug Nasu rushes'

44.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach in front, on the jaws, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the right ear the Drug Nasu rushes.'

45.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right ear, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left ear the Drug Nasu rushes'

46.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left ear, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the right shoulder the Drug Nasu rushes.'

47.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right shoulder, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left shoulder the Drug Nasu rushes.'

48.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left shoulder, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the right arm-pit the Drug Nasu rushes.'

49.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right arm-pit, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left arm-pit the Drug Nasu rushes.'

50.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left arm-pit, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'In front, upon the chest, the Drug Nasu rushes.'

51.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the chest in front, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the back the Drug Nasu rushes.'

52.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the back, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the right nipple the Drug Nasu rushes.'

53.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right nipple, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the left nipple the Drug Nasu rushes.'

54.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left nipple, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the right rib the Drug Nasu rushes.'

55.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right rib, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left rib the Drug Nasu rushes.'

56.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left rib, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the right hip the Drug Nasu rushes.'

57.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right hip, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left hip the Drug Nasu rushes.'

58.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left hip, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the sexual parts the Drug Nasu rushes. If the unclean one be a man, thou shalt sprinkle him first behind, then before; if the unclean one be a woman, thou shalt sprinkle her first before, then behind

59.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the sexual parts, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Upon the right thigh the Drug Nasu rushes.'

60.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right thigh, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left thigh the Drug Nasu rushes.'

61.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left thigh, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the right knee the Drug Nasu rushes.'

62.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right knee, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left knee the Drug Nasu rushes.'

63.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left knee, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the right leg the Drug Nasu rushes.'

64.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right leg, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left leg the Drug Nasu rushes.'

65.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left leg, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered; ' Upon the right ankle the Drug Nasu rushes.'

66.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right ankle, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the left ankle the Drug Nasu rushes.'

67.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left ankle, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Upon the right instep the Drug Nasu rushes.'

68.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the right instep, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered; ' Upon the left instep the Drug Nasu rushes.'

69.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When the good waters reach the left instep, whereon does the Drug Nasu rush? Ahura Mazda answered: ' She is driven to the sole of the foot, where what is seen of her is like the wing of a fly.

70.'He shall press his toes upon the ground, and shall raise up his heels; thou shalt sprinkle his right sole with water; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left sole. Thou shalt sprinkle the left sole with water; then the Drug Nasu is driven to the toes, where what is seen of her is like the wing of a fly.

71.'He shall press his heels upon the ground and shall raise up his toes; thou shalt sprinkle his right toe with water; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left toe. Thou shalt sprinkle the left toe with water; then the Drug Nasu flies away to the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

72.'And thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting and most-healing words: ' "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c. ' " Whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me?" &c. ' " Who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances?" &c. ' " Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Rush away, O Drug! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit"

VIII.

73.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If worshippers of Mazda, walking, or running, or riding, or driving, come upon a corpse-burning fire, whereon a corpse is being cooked or roasted, what shall they do?

74.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall kill the man that burns the corpse; surely they shall kill him. They shall take off the cauldron, they shall take off the tripod

75.'Then they shall kindle wood from that fire; either wood of those trees that have the seed of fire in them, or bundles of the very wood that was prepared for that fire; and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner

76.'Thus they shall lay a first bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner

77.'They shall lay down a second bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. 'They shall lay down a third bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. 'They shall lay down a fourth bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. 'They shall lay down a fifth bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. 'They shall lay down a sixth bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. ' They shall lay down a seventh bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner. ' They shall

lay down an eighth bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner.

78.'They shall lay down a ninth bundle on the ground, a Vitasti away from the corpse-burning fire, and they shall separate and disperse it, that it may die out the sooner.

79.'If a man shall then piously bring unto the fire, O Spitama Zarathustra! wood of Urvasna, or Vohugaona, or Vohu-kereti, or Hadhi-naepata, or any other sweet-smelling wood, wheresoever the wind shall bring the perfume of the fire, thereunto Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, shall go and kill thousands of unseen Daevas, thousands of fiends, the brood of darkness, thousands of couples of Yatus and Pairikas.'

IX.

81.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring a corpse-burning fire to the Daityo-gitu, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought ten thousand fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

82.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gitu the fire wherein excrement has been burnt, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought a thousand fire-brands to the Daityo-gitu.'

83.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire wherein cow dung has been burnt, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought five hundred fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

84.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire from the kiln of a brick-maker, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought four hundred fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

85.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire from a potter's kiln, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought to the Daityo-gatu as many fire-brands as there were pots baked in that fire.'

86.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of the reapers, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought to the Daityo-gatu as many fire-brands as there were plants in the crop.'

87.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of a goldsmith, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought a hundred fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

88.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of a silversmith, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought ninety fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

89.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of a worker in brass, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought eighty fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

90.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of a blacksmith, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought seventy fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

91.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of an oven, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted from his body? Ahura Mazda answered: ' His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought sixty fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

92.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire from under a cauldron, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: ' His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought fifty fire-brands to Daityo-gatu.'

93.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire from an encampment, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought forty fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

94.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring a herdsman's fire to the Daityo-gatu, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought thirty fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

95.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of the field, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought twenty fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu.'

96.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man bring to the Daityo-gatu the fire of his own hearth, what shall be his reward when his soul has parted with his body? Ahura Mazda answered: 'His reward shall be the same as if he had, here below, brought ten fire-brands to the Daityo-gatu '

X.

97.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Can a man be made clean, O holy Ahura Mazda! who has touched a corpse in a distant place in the fields?

98.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He can, O holy Zarathustra.' How so? ' If the Nasu has already been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs or the corpse-eating birds, he shall wash his body with gomez; he shall wash it thirty times, he shall rub it dry with the hand thirty times, beginning every time with the head

99.'If the Nasu has not yet been smitten by the corpse-eating dogs or the corpse-eating birds, he shall wash his body with gomez; he shall wash it fifteen times, he shall rub it dry with the hand fifteen times

100.'Then he shall run a distance of a Hathra. He shall run until he meets some man on his way, then he shall cry out aloud: "Here am I, one who has touched the corpse of a man, without any willful sin of mind, tongue, or hand, and who wishes to be made clean." Thus shall he run until he overtakes the man. If the man will not cleanse him, he takes upon his own head the third of his trespass.

101.'Then he shall run another Hathra, he shall run off again until he overtakes a man; if the man will not cleanse him, he takes upon his own head the half of his trespass.

102.'Then he shall run a third Hithra, he shall run off a third time until he overtakes a man; if the man will not cleanse him, he takes upon his own head the whole of his trespass

103.'Thus shall he run forwards until he comes near a house, a borough, a town, an inhabited district, and he shall cry out with a loud voice: "Here am I, one who has touched the corpse of a man, without any willful sin of mind, tongue, or hand, and who wishes to be made clean." If they will not cleanse him, he shall cleanse his body with gomez; and water; thus shall he be clean.'

104.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If he found water on his way, the water requires an atonement; what is the penalty that he shall pay?

105.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Four hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, four hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

106.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If he found trees on his way, the fire requires an atonement; what is the penalty he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Four hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, four hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.

107.'This is the penalty, this is the atonement, which saves him who submits to it; he who does not submit to it, shall surely be an inhabitant in the mansion of the Drug.'

FARGARD IX

THE NINE NIGHTS BARASHNUM

Ia (1-11).Description of the place for cleansing the unclean (the Barashnum-gah)

Ib (12-36).Description of the cleansing.

II (37-44).Fees of the cleanser.

III (47-57).The false cleanser; his punishment. §§ 45, 46 belong better to the following Faigard.

The ceremony described in this Fargard is known among the Parsis as Barashnum nu shaba, or 'nine nights' Barashnum,' because it lasts for nine nights (see § 35). It is the great purification, the most efficacious of all; it not only makes the defiled man clean, but it opens to him the heavens (see Farg. XIX, 33; cf. Introd. V, 16). So, although it was formerly intended only for the man defiled by the dead, it became, during the Parsi period, a pious work which might be performed without any corpse having been touched; nay, its performance was prescribed, once at least, at the time of the Nu zudi (at the age of fifteen, when the young Parsi becomes a member of the community), in order to wash away the natural uncleanness that has been contracted in the maternal womb (Saddar 36, Hyde 40)

Ia.

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall they manage here below, who want to cleanse the body of one defiled by the dead?'

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'A godly man, O Spitama Zarathustra! who speaks truth, who learns the Holy Word, and who knows best the rites of cleansing according to the law of Mazda, such a man shall fell the trees off the surface of the ground on a space of nine Vibazus square.

3. 'It should be the part of the ground where there is least water and where there are fewest trees, the part which is the cleanest and driest, and the least passed through by sheep and oxen, and by Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, by the consecrated bundles of baresma, and by the faithful.'

4. How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

5. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thirty paces from the fire, thirty paces from the water, thirty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma, three paces from the faithful

6. 'Then thou shalt dig a hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come

7. 'Thou shalt dig a second hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come. ' Thou shalt dig a third hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come. ' Thou shalt dig a fourth hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come. ' Thou shalt dig a fifth hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come. ' Thou shalt dig a sixth hole, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come.'

8. How far from one another? 'One pace.' How much is the pace? ' As much as three feet.

9. 'Then thou shalt dig three holes more, two fingers deep if the summer has come, four fingers deep if the winter and ice have come.' How far from the former six? ' Three paces.' What sort of paces? ' Such as are taken in walking.' How much are those (three) paces? ' As much as nine feet.

10. 'Then thou shalt draw a furrow all around with a metal knife.' How far from the holes? ' Three paces;' What sort of paces? ' Such as are taken in walking.' How much are those (three) paces? ' As much as nine feet.

11. 'Thou shalt draw twelve furrows; three of which thou shalt draw around (the first) three holes; three thou shalt draw around (the first) six holes; three thou shalt draw around the nine holes; three thou shalt draw around the three holes, outside the six holes. At each of the three times nine feet, thou shalt place stones as steps to the holes; or potsherds, or stumps, or clods, or any hard matter.'

1b.

12. 'Then the unclean one shall walk to the holes; thou, O Zarathustra! shalt stand outside by the furrow, and thou shalt recite, Nemaska ya armaitis izaka; and the unclean one shall repeat, Nemaska ya armaitis izaka.

13. 'The Drug becomes weaker and weaker at every one of those words which are to smite the fiend Angra Mainyu, to smite Aeshma of the bloody spear, to smite the Mazainya fiends, to smite all the fiends.

14.'Then thou shalt sprinkle him with gomez from a spoon of brass or of lead; thou shalt take a stick with nine knots, O Spitama Zarathustra! and thou shalt fasten the leaden spoon to the upper part of the stick.

15.'They shall wash his hands first. If his hands be not washed first, he makes his whole body unclean. When he has washed his hands three times, after his hands have been washed, thou shalt sprinkle the forepart of his skull; then the Drug Nasu rushes in front, between his brows

16.'Thou shalt sprinkle him in front between the brows; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the back part of the skull. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the back part of the skull; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the jaws. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the jaws; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right ear.

17.'Thou shalt sprinkle the right ear; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left ear. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left ear; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right shoulder 'Thou shalt sprinkle the right shoulder; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left shoulder. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left shoulder; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right arm-pit.

18.'Thou shalt sprinkle the right. armpit; then the Drug. Nasu rushes upon the left arm-pit. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left arm-pit; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the chest. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the chest; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the back.

19.'Thou shalt sprinkle the back; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right nipple. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the right nipple; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left nipple. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left nipple; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right rib.

20.'Thou shalt sprinkle the right rib; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left rib. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left rib; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right hip. 'Thou shalt sprinkle the right hip; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left hip.

21.'Thou shalt sprinkle the left hip; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the sexual parts. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the sexual parts. If the unclean one be a man, thou shalt sprinkle him first behind, then before; if the unclean one be a woman, thou shalt sprinkle her first before, then behind; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right thigh.

22.'Thou shalt sprinkle the right thigh; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left thigh. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left thigh; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right knee. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the right knee; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left knee.

23. 'Thou shalt sprinkle the left knee; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right leg. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the right leg; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left leg. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left leg; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right ankle. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the right ankle; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left ankle.

24.'Thou shalt sprinkle the left ankle; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the right instep. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the right instep; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left instep. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left instep; then the Drug Nasu is driven to the sole of the foot, where what is seen of her is like the wing of a fly.

25.'He shall press his toes upon the ground and shall raise up his heels; thou shalt sprinkle his right sole; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left sole. ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left sole; then the Drug Nasu is driven to the toes, where what is seen of her is like the wing of a fly.

26.'He shall press his heels upon the ground and shall raise up his toes; thou shalt sprinkle his right toe; then the Drug Nasu rushes upon the left toe; ' Thou shalt sprinkle the left toe; then the Drug Nasu flies away to the regions of the north, in the shape of a raging fly, with knees and tail sticking out, all stained with stains, and like unto the foulest Khrafstras.

27. 'And thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: ' "Yatha ahu vairyo: The will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor. "' Kem na mazda: Whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me? Whom, but thy Atar and Vohu-mano, by whose work the holy world goes on? Reveal to me the rules of thy law! "'Ke verethrem ga: Who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances? Teach me clearly thy rules, for this world and for the next, that Sraosha may come with Vohu-mano and help whomsoever thou pleasest. ' " Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Rush away, O Drug! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit! "

28.'At the first hole the man becomes freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: " Yatha ahu vairyo," &c. ' At the second hole he becomes freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: " Yatha ahu vairyo," &c. 'At the third hole he becomes freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most healing words: "Yatha ahu vairyo,"&c. 'At the fourth hole he becomes freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: "Yatha ahu vairyo," &c. 'At the fifth hole he becomes 'freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: " Yatha ahu vairyo," &c. ' At the sixth hole he becomes freer from the Nasu; then thou shalt say those fiend-smiting and most-healing words: " Yatha ahu vairyo," &c

29.'Afterwards the unclean one shall sit down, inside the furrows, outside the furrows of the six holes, four fingers from those furrows. There he shall cleanse his body with thick handfuls of dust.

30.'Fifteen times shall they take up dust from the ground for him to rub his body, and they shall wait there until he is dry even. to the last hair on his head

31.'When his body is dry, then he shall step over the holes (containing water). At the first hole he shall wash his body once with water; at the second hole he shall wash his body twice with water; at the third hole he shall wash his body thrice with water.

32.'Then he shall perfume (his body) with perfumes from Urvasna, or Vohu-gaona, or Vohu-kereti, or Hadha-naepata, or from any sweet smelling plant; then he shall put on his clothes, and shall go back to his house.

33.'He shall sit down there in the place of infirmity, inside the house, apart from the other worshippers of Mazda. He shall not go near the fire, nor near the water, nor near the earth, nor near the cow, nor near the trees, nor near the faithful, either man or woman. Thus shall he continue until three nights have passed. When three nights have passed, he shall wash his body, he shall wash his clothes with g6mez and water to make them clean.

34.'Then he shall sit down again in the place of infirmity, inside the house, apart from the other worshippers of Mazda. He shall not go near the fire, nor near the water, nor near the earth, nor near the cow, nor near the trees, nor near the faithful, either man or woman. Thus shall he continue until six nights have passed. When six nights have passed, he shall wash his body, he shall wash his clothes with gomez and water to make them clean.

35.'Then he shall sit down again in the place of infirmity, inside the house, apart from the other worshippers of Mazda. He shall not go near the fire, nor near the water, nor near the earth, nor near the cow, nor near the trees, nor near the faithful, either man or woman. Thus shall he continue, until nine nights have passed. When nine nights have passed, he shall wash his body, he shall wash his clothes with gomez and water to make them clean.

36.'He may thenceforth go near the fire, near the water, near the earth, near the cow, near the trees, and near the faithful, either man or woman.

II.

37.'Thou shalt cleanse a priest for a holy blessing; thou shalt cleanse the lord of a province for the value of a camel of high value; thou shalt cleanse the lord of a town for the value of a stallion; thou shalt cleanse the lord of a borough for the value of a bull; thou shalt cleanse the master of a house for the value of a cow three years old

38.'Thou shalt cleanse the wife of the master of a house for the value of a ploughing cow; thou shalt cleanse a menial for the value of a draught cow'; thou shalt cleanse a young child for the value of a lamb.

39.'These are the different cattle that the worshippers of Mazda shall give to him who has cleansed them, if they can afford it; if they cannot afford it, they shall give him any other reward that may make him leave their houses well-pleased with them, and free from anger.

40.'For if the man who has cleansed them leave their houses displeased with them, and full of anger, then the Drug Nasu enters them by the nose, by the eyes, by the tongue, by the jaws, by the sexual organs, by the hinder parts.

41.'And the Drug Nasu rushes upon them even to the end of the nails, and they are unclean thenceforth for ever and ever. 'It grieves the sun indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! to shine upon a man defiled by the dead; it grieves the moon, it grieves the stars.

42.'That man delights them, O Spitama Zarathustra! who cleanses from the Nasu those whom she has defiled; he delights the fire, he delights the water, he delights the earth, he delights the cow, he delights the trees, he delights the faithful, both men and women.'

43.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What shall be his reward, after his soul has parted from his body, who has cleansed from the Nasu any one defiled by her?

44. Ahura Mazda answered: 'The welfare of the blessed abode thou canst promise to that man, for his reward in the other world.'

45. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I fight against that Drug who from the dead rushes upon the living? How shall I fight against that Nasu who from the dead defiles the living?'

46. Ahura Mazda answered: ' Say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said twice; say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said thrice; say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said four times; and the Drug shall fade away like the self-moving arrow, like the carpet of the earth when the year is over, like its garment which lasts a season.'

47. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man who does not know the rites of cleansing according to the law of Mazda, offers to cleanse the unclean, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do? How shall I then fight against that Drug who from the dead rushes upon the living? How shall I fight against that Drug who from the dead defiles the living?'

48. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Then, O Spitama Zarathustra! the Drug Nasu waxes stronger than she was before. Stronger than are sickness and death and the working of the fiend than they were before.'

49. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'The worshippers of Mazda shall bind him; they shall bind his hands first; then they shall strip him of his clothes, they shall flay him alive, they shall cut off his head, and they shall give over his corpse unto the greediest of the birds of the beneficent spirit, unto the corpse-eating birds, unto the ravens, with these words: ' " The man here has repented of all his evil thoughts, words, and deeds.

50. "If he has committed any other evil deed, it is remitted by his repentance; if he has committed no other evil deed, he is absolved by his repentance for ever and ever."

51. Who is he, O Ahura Mazda! who threatens to take away fulness and increase from the world, and to bring in sickness and death?'

52. Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the ungodly Ashemaogha, O Spitama Zarathustra! who in this material world cleanses the unclean without knowing the rites of cleansing according to the law of Mazda.

53. 'For until then, O Spitama Zarathustra! sweetness and fatness would flow out from that land and from those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass.'

54. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When are sweetness and fatness to come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass?'

55, 56. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Sweetness and fatness will never come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass, until that ungodly Ashemaogha has been put to death, and the holy Sraosha has been in that place, offered up a sacrifice", for three days and three nights, with fire blazing, with baresma tied up, and with Haoma uplifted.

57.'Then sweetness and fatness will come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass.'

FARGARD X

During the process of cleansing, the voice works with the hand. The spells which must be recited while the unclean one is cleansing himself have already been mentioned in the preceding Fargard, but we find here a detailed list of spells which are to be spoken twice, or thrice, or four times. The exact time when they are to be uttered is not mentioned, and we do not know whether they are to accompany those prescribed in the last Fargard, and are, therefore, to be repeated as often as the unclean one is washed, or whether they are only intended to close the whole ceremony. These spells, like the former ones, are taken from the hymns or Gathas, the oldest and holiest part of the Avesta. They were not written for this particular purpose, but, as happens in all religions, advantage was taken of whatever there might be in the old sacred hymns which could be more or less easily applied to the special circumstances of the case. The recitation of these lines is followed by an exorcism, written in the ordinary language of the Avesta, which has been expressly composed for the occasion.

1.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: ' O Ahura Mazda! most beneficent spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I fight against that Drug who from the dead rushes upon the living? How shall I fight against that Drug who from the dead defiles the living?'

2.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said twice; say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said thrice; say aloud those words in the Gathas that are to be said four times.'

3.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which are those words in the Gathas that are to be said twice?

4.Ahura Mazda answered: ' These are the words in the Gathas that are to be said twice, and thou shalt twice say them aloud:

ahya yasa... urvanem (Yasna XXVIII, 2),

humatenam... maht (Yas. XXXV, 2),

ashahya aad saire... ahubya (Yas. XXXV, 8),

yatha tu i... ahura (Yas. XXXIX, 4),

humaim thwa... hudaustema (Vas. XLI, 3),

thwoi staotaraska... ahura (Yas. XLI, 5),

usti ahmai... manangho (Yas. XLIII, 1),

spenti mainyti... ahuro (Yas. XLVII, 1),

vohu khshathrem... vareshane (Yas. LI, 1),

vahista istis... skyaothanaka (Y as. LI I I, 1).

5.'And after thou hast twice said those words, thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting and most-healing words: "I drive away Angra Mainyu from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world.

6.'I drive away the Nasu, I drive away direct defilement, I drive away indirect defilement, from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world."

7.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which are those words in the Gathas that are to be said thrice?

8.Ahura Mazda answered: ' These are the words in the Gathas that are to be said thrice, and thou shalt thrice say them aloud:

ashem vohu... (Vas. XXVII, 14),

ye sevisto... paiti (Vas. XXXIII, 11),

hukhshathrotemai... vahistii (Vas. XXXV, 5),

duzvarenais... vahyo (Vas. LIII, 9).

9.'After thou hast thrice said those words, thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting and most healing words:" I drive away Indra, I drive away Sauru, I drive away the daeva Naunghaithya, from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world.

10." I drive away Tauru, I drive away Zairi, from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world."

11.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which are those words in the Githas that are to be said four times?

12.Ahura Mazda answered: ' These are the words in the Gathas that are to be said four times, and thou shalt four times say them aloud:

yatha ahu vairyo... (Yas. XXVII, 13),

mazda ad moi... dau ahum (Yas. XXXIV, 15),

a airyama ishyo... masata mazdau (Yas. LIV, 1).

13. 'After thou hast said those words four times, thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting and most-healing words:" I drive away Aeshma, the fiend of the wounding spear, I drive away the daeva Akatasha, from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world.

14. " I drive away the Varenya daevas, I drive away the wind-daevas, from this house, from this borough, from this town, from this land; from the very body of the man defiled by the dead, from the very body of the woman defiled by the dead; from the master of the house, from the lord of the borough, from the lord of the town, from the lord of the land; from the whole of the holy world."

15. 'These are the words in the Gathas that are to be said twice; these are the words in the Gathas that are to be said thrice; these are the words in the Gathas that are to be said four times.

16. 'These are the words that smite down Angra Mainyu; these are the words that smite down Aeshma, the fiend of the wounding spear; these are the words that smite down the Mizainya daevas; these are the words that smite down all the daevas.

17. 'These are the words that stand against that Drug, against that Nasu, who from the dead rushes upon the living, who from the dead defiles the living.

18. 'Therefore, O Zarathustra! thou shalt dig nine holes in the part of the ground where there is least water and where there are fewest trees; where there is nothing that may be food either for man or beast; for purity is for man, next to life, the greatest good; that purity that is procured by the law of Mazda for him who cleanses himself with good thoughts, words, and deeds.

19. 'Make thyself pure, O righteous man! any one in the world here below can win purity for himself, namely, when he cleanses himself with good thoughts, words, and deeds.

20. 'The will of the Lord is the law of holiness,' &c. 'Whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me?' &c. ' Who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances?' &c. 'Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! ... Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!'

FARGARD XI

This chapter, like the preceding, is composed of spells intended to drive away the Nasu. But they are of a more special character, as they refer to the particular objects to be cleansed, such as the house, the fire, the water, &c. Each incantation consists of two parts, a line from the Gathas which alludes, or rather is made to allude, to the particular object, and a general exorcism, in the usual dialect, which is the same for all the objects.

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Ahura Mazda! most beneficent spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? how the fire? how the water? how the earth? how the cow? how the tree? how the faithful man and the faithful woman? how the stars? how the moon? how the sun? how the boundless light? how all good things, made by Mazda, the offspring of the holy principle?

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thou shalt chant the cleansing words, and the house shall be clean; clean shall be the fire, clean the water, clean the earth, clean the cow, clean the tree, clean the faithful man and the faithful woman, clean the stars, clean the moon, clean the sun, clean the boundless light, clean all good things, made by Mazda, the offspring of the holy principle.

3. 'So thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words; thou shalt chant the Ahuna-Vairya five times: "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c. "The Ahuna-Vairya preserves the person of man: "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c. "' Whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me?" &c. "' Who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances?" &c. "' Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta!" &c.

4. 'If thou wantest to cleanse the house, say these words aloud: "He is my greatest support as long as lasts this dreary world." 'If thou wantest to cleanse the fire, say these words aloud: "Thy fire, first of all, do we approach with worship, O Ahura Mazda!"

5. 'If thou wantest to cleanse the water, say these words aloud: "Waters we worship, the waters in the tree, the waters in the stream, the waters in the rain." 'If thou wantest to cleanse the earth, say these words aloud: " This earth we worship, this earth with the women, this earth which bears us and those women who are thine, O Ahura!"

6. 'If thou wantest to cleanse the cow, say these words aloud: "For the cow we order thee to do these most excellent deeds, that she may have a resting place and fodder." 'If thou wantest to cleanse the trees, say these words aloud: "Out of him', through his holiness Mazda made the plants grow up."

7. 'If thou wantest to cleanse the faithful man or the faithful woman, say these words aloud: " May the beloved Airyaman come hither, for the men and women of Zarathustra to rejoice, for the faithful to rejoice; with the desirable reward that is won by means of the law, and with that boon for holiness that is vouchsafed by Ahura!"

8. 'Then thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words. Thou shalt chant the Ahuna-Vairya eight times: "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c. "Whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda?" &c. "Who is he who will smite the fiend?" &c. "' Keep us from our hater, O Mazda!" &c

9. 'I drive away Aeshma, I drive away the Nasu, I drive away direct defilement, I drive away indirect defilement. [I drive away Khru, I drive away Khruighni; I drive away Buidhiza; I drive away Buidhiza; I drive away Kundi, I drive away Kundiza] 'I drive away the yellow Bushyasta, I drive away the long-handed Bushyasta; [I drive away Muidhi, I drive away Kapasti] 'I drive away the Pairika that comes upon the fire, upon the water, upon the earth, upon the cow, upon the tree. I drive away the demon of uncleanness that comes upon the fire, upon the water, upon the earth, upon the cow, upon the tree.

10. 'I drive thee away, O mischievous Angra Mainyu! from the fire, from the water, from the earth, from the cow, from the tree, from the faithful man and from the faithful woman, from the stars, from the moon, from the sun, from the boundless light, from all good things, made by Mazda, the offspring of the holy principle

11. 'Then thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words; thou shalt chant four Ahuna-Vairyas: "'The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c.

"Whom hast thou placed to protect me?" &c.

"Who is he who will smite the fiend?" &c.

"Keep us from our hater, O Mazda!" &c.

12. 'Away is Aeshma driven; away is the Nasu driven; away is direct defilement; away is indirect defilement driven. ('Away is Khru, away is Khruighni driven; away is Boidhi, away is Buidhiza driven; away is Kundi, away is Kundiza driven.) 'Away is Bushyasta driven, the yellow; away is Bushyasta driven, the long-handed; (away is Muidhi, away is Kapasti driven.) 'Away is the Pairika driven that comes upon the fire, upon the water, upon the earth, upon the cow, upon the tree. Away is the demon of uncleanness driven that comes upon the fire, upon the water, upon the earth, upon the cow, upon the tree.

13. 'Away art thou driven, O mischievous Angra Mainyu! from the fire, from the water, from the earth, from the cow, from the tree, from the faithful man and from the faithful woman, from the stars, from the moon, from the sun, from the boundless light, from all good things, made by Mazda, the offspring of the holy principle.

14. 'Then thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words; thou shalt chant "Mazdi ad moi" four times: "O Mazda! teach me excellent words and excellent works, that through the good thought and the holiness of him who offers thee due praise, thou mayest, O Lord! make the world thrive for ever and ever, at thy will, under thy sovereign rule."

15. 'I drive away Aeshma, I drive away the Nasu,' &c.

16. 'I drive thee away, O mischievous Angra Mainyu! from the fire, from the water,' &c.

17. 'Then thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words; thou shalt chant the Airyama-ishyo four times: "May the beloved Airyaman come hither!" &c.

18. 'Away is Aeshma driven; away is the Nasu driven,' &c.

19. 'Away art thou driven, O mischievous Angra Mainyu! from the fire, from the water,' &c.

20. 'Then thou shalt say these fiend-smiting and most-healing words; thou shalt chant five Ahuna-Vairyas: "The will of the Lord is the law of holiness," &c. "Whom hast thou placed to protect me?" &c. "Who is he who will smite the fiend?" &c. "Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Rush away, O Drug! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!"

FARGARD XII

This chapter is found only in the Vendidad Sadah; it is missing in the Zend-Pahlavi Vendidad. This is owing, as it seems, only to the accidental loss of some folios in the one manuscript from which all the copies as yet known have been derived; and, in fact, even in the most ancient manuscripts the following Fargard is numbered the thirteenth (Westergaard, Zend-Avesta, preface, p. 5). The directions in the preceding chapter are general, and do not depend on the relationship of the faithful with the deceased person; but those in this Fargard are of a special character, and apply only to the near relatives of the dead. Their

object is to determine how long the time of 'staying' (up am an) should last for different relatives. What is meant by this word is not explained; but, as the word upaman is usually employed to indicate the staying of the unclean in the Armet-gah, apart from the faithful and from every clean object, it seems to follow that the relatives of a dead person were considered unclean from the mere fact of being related to him, and were, on this account, shut out of the frequented parts of the house. So, besides the general uncleanness arising from actual contact with a corpse, there was another form of uncleanness arising from relationship with the dead. The natural link that connects the members of one and the same family is of such a kind that no one can die without death entering all of them. Whether this is the primitive form of mourning, or only a later form of it, we will not discuss here. On the other hand, the house is unclean too, at least with regard to the relatives; for the time of 'staying' is followed by a purification of the house, that is not to be confounded with that described in the eighth Fargard, which takes place directly after the death and, as it appears, opens the house again only to those who were not connected with the dead man. Even nowadays, in Persia, the house where a relative has died is unlucky, and is looked upon with even more repugnance than is shown in the Avesta. The son deserts the house where his father has died; he could not live and walk in it, 'the unlucky step,' the bad qadim is in it; 'every man's house must die with him;' therefore, he lets it fall into ruin, and builds another house farther off; a custom to which there seems to be some allusion in the Pahlavi Commentary (ad I, 9).

1.If one's father or mother dies, how long shall they stay, the son for his father, the daughter for her mother? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay thirty days for the righteous, sixty days for the sinners.'

2.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Githas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters ; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter', O Spitama Zarathustra! '

3.If one's son or daughter dies, how long shall they stay, the father for his son, the mother for her daughter? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay thirty days for the righteous, sixty days for the sinners.'

4.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Githas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

5.If one's brother or sister dies, how long shall they stay, the brother for his brother, the sister for her sister? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay thirty days for the righteous, sixty days for the sinners.'

6.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

7.If the master of the house dies, or if the mistress of the house dies, how long shall they stay? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay six months for the righteous, a year for the sinners.'

8.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Githas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

9.If one's grandfather or grandmother dies, how long shall they stay, the grandson for his grandfather, the granddaughter for her grandmother? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay twenty five days for the righteous, fifty days for the sinners.'

10.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra!'

11.If one's grandson or granddaughter dies, how long shall they stay, the grandfather for his grandson, the grandmother for her granddaughter? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay twenty five days for the righteous, fifty days for the sinners.'

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

13.If one's uncle or aunt dies, how long shall they stay, the nephew for his uncle, the niece for her aunt? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall stay twenty days for the righteous, forty days for the sinners.'

14.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be

clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

15.If one's male cousin or female cousin dies, how long shall they stay? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall stay fifteen days for the righteous, thirty days for the sinners.'

16.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra! '

17.If the son or the daughter of a cousin dies, how long shall they stay? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay ten days for the righteous, twenty days for the sinners.'

18.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra!'

19.If the grandson of a cousin or the granddaughter of a cousin dies, how long shall they stay? How long for the righteous? How long for the sinners? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall stay five days for the righteous, ten days for the sinners.'

20.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How shall I cleanse the house? How shall it be clean again? Ahura Mazda answered: ' They shall wash their bodies three times, they shall wash their clothes three times, they shall chant the Gathas three times; they shall offer up a sacrifice to my Fire, they shall offer up the bundles of baresma, they shall bring libations to the good waters; then the house shall be clean, and then the waters may enter, then the fire may enter, and then the Amesha-Spentas may enter, O Spitama Zarathustra!'

21.If a stranger dies who does not profess the true faith, or the true law what part of the creation of the good spirit does he directly defile (in dying)? What part does he indirectly defile?

22.Ahura Mazda answered: 'No more than a frog does whose venom is dried up, and that has been dead more than a year. Whilst alive, indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! that wicked, two-legged ruffian, that ungodly Ashemaogha, directly defiles the creatures of the good spirit, and indirectly defiles them.

23.'Whilst alive he smites the water; whilst alive he blows out the fire; whilst alive he carries off the cow; whilst alive he smites the faithful man with a deadly blow, that parts the soul from the body; not so will he do when dead.

24.'Whilst alive, indeed, O Spitama Zarathustra! that wicked, two-legged ruffian, that ungodly Ashemaogha, never ceases depriving the faithful man of his food, of his clothing, of his house, of his bed, of his vessels; not so will he do when dead.'

FARGARD XIII

THE DOG

I (1-7).The dog of Ormazd and the dog of Ahriman

(a. 1-4).The dog Vanghapara (' the hedge-hog')

(b. 4-7).The dog Zairimyangura ('the tortoise')

II (8-16).Offences against the dog.

III (17-19).On the several duties of the dog.

IV (20-28).On the food due to the dog

V (29-38).On the mad dog; bow he is to be kept, and cured.

VI (39-40).On the excellence of the dog.

VII (41-43).On the wolf-dog.

VIII (44-48).On the virtues and vices of the dog.

IX (49-50).Praise of the dog.

X (50-54).The water dog.

See Introd. IV, 35.

1a.

1.Which is the good creature among the creatures of the good spirit that from midnight till the sun is up goes and kills thousands of the creatures of the evil spirit?

2.Ahura Mazda answered: 'The dog with the prickly back, with the long and thin muzzle, the dog Vanghapara, which evil-speaking people call the Duzaka; this is the good creature among the creatures of the good spirit that from midnight till the sun is up goes and kills thousands of the creatures of the evil spirit.

3.'And whosoever, O Zarathustra! shall kill the dog with the prickly back, with the long and thin muzzle, the dog Vanghapara, which evil-speaking people call the Duzaka, kills his own soul for nine generations,

nor shall he find a way over the Kinvad bridge, unless he has, while alive, atoned for his sin by offering up a sacrifice to Sraosha.

4.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I If a man kill the dog with the prickly back, with the long and thin muzzle, the dog Vanghapara, which evil-speaking people call the Duzaka, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

lb.

5.Which is the evil creature among the creatures of the evil spirit that from midnight till the sun is up goes and kills thousands of the creatures of the good spirit?

6.Ahura Mazda answered: 'The daeva Zairimyangura, which evil-speaking people call the Zairimyaka, this is the evil creature among the creatures of the evil spirit that from midnight till the sun is up goes and kills thousands of the creatures of the good spirit.'

7.'And whosoever, O Zarathustra! shall kill the daeva Zairimyangura, which evil-speaking people call the Zairimyaka, his sins in thought, word, and deed are redeemed as they would be by a Patet; his sins in thought, word, and deed are atoned for.'

II.

8.'Whosoever shall smite either a shepherd's dog, or a house dog, or a Vohunazga dog, or a trained dog his soul when passing to the other world, shall fly amid louder howling and fiercer pursuing than the sheep does when the wolf rushes upon it in the lofty forest.'

9.'No soul will come and meet his departing soul and help it through the howls and pursuits in the other world; nor will the dogs that keep the Kinvad bridge help his departing soul through the howls and pursuit in the other world'

10.'If a man shall smite a shepherd's dog so that it becomes unfit for work, if he shall cut off its ear or its paw, and thereupon a thief or a wolf · break in and carry away sheep from the fold, without the dog giving any warning, the man shall pay for the lost sheep, and he shall pay for the wound of the dog as for willful wounding'

11.'If a man shall smite a house dog so that it becomes unfit for work, if he shall cut off its ear or its paw, and thereupon a thief or a wolf break in and carry away goods from the house, without the dog giving any warning, the man shall pay for the lost goods, and he shall pay for the wound of the dog as for willful wounding.'

12.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall smite a shepherd's dog, so that it gives up the ghost and the soul parts from the body, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Eight hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, eight hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

13.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall smite a house dog so that it gives up the ghost and the soul parts from the body, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seven hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seven hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

14.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall smite a Vohunazga dog so that it gives up the ghost and the soul parts from the body, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Six hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, six hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

15.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall smite a young dog so that it gives up the ghost and the soul parts from the body, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Five hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, five hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

16.'This is the penalty for the murder of a Gazu dog, of a Vizu dog, of a Sukuruna dog, of a sharp-toothed Urupi dog of a swift-running Raopi dog; this is the penalty for the murder of any kind of dog but the water dog.'

17.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the dog that must be called a shepherd's dog? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the dog who goes a Yugyesti round about the fold, watching for the thief and the wolf.'

18.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the dog that must be called a house dog? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the dog who goes a Hathra round about the house, watching for the thief and the wolf.'

19.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the dog that must be called a Vohunazga dog? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the dog who claims none of those talents, and only seeks for his subsistence.'

IV.

20.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man give bad food to a shepherd's dog, of what sin is he guilty? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the same guilt as though he should serve bad food to a master of a house of the first ranks'

21.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man give bad food to a house dog, of what sin is he guilty? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the same guilt. as though he should serve bad food to a master of a house of middle rank.'

22.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man give bad food to a Vohunazga dog, of what sin is he guilty? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the same guilt as though he should serve bad food to a holy man, in the character of a priest, who should come to his house.'

23.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man give bad food to a young dog, of what sin is he guilty? Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the same guilt as though he should serve bad food to a young man, born of pious parents, and who can answer for himself.'

24.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall give bad food to a shepherd's dog, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

25.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall give bad food to a house dog, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Ninety stripes with the Aspae-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

26.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall give bad food to a Vohunazga dog, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seventy stripes with the Aspae-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho- karana.'

27.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a man shall give bad food to a young dog, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: ' Fifty stripes with the Aspae-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana.

28.'For it is the dog, of all the creatures of the good spirit, that most quickly decays into age, while not eating near eating people, and watching goods none of which it receives. Bring ye unto him milk and fat with meat; this is the right food for the dog.'

29.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If there be in the house of a worshipper of Mazda a mad dog, or one that bites without barking, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

30.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall put a wooden collar around his neck, and they shall tie him to a post, an asti thick if the wood be hard, two astis thick if it be soft. To that post they shall tie him; by the two sides of the collar they shall tie him.

31.'If they shall not do so, and the mad dog, or the dog that bites without barking, smite a sheep or wound a man, the dog shall pay for it as for willful murder

32.'If the dog shall smite a sheep or wound a man, they shall cut off his right ear. If he shall smite another sheep or wound another man, they shall cut off his left ear

33.'If he shall smite a third sheep or wound a third man, they shall cut off his right foot' If he shall smite a fourth sheep or wound a fourth man, they shall cut off his left foot

34.'If he shall for the fifth time smite a sheep or wound a man, they shall cut off his tail. ' Therefore they shall tie him to the post; by the two sides of the collar they shall tie him. If they shall not do so, and the mad dog, or the dog that bites without barking, smite a sheep or wound a man, he shall pay for it as for willful murder.'

35.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If there be in the house of a worshipper of Mazda a scentless dog, or a mad dog, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do? Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall attend him to heal him, in the same manner as they would do for one of the faithful.'

36.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If they try to heal him and fail, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

37.Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall put a wooden collar around his neck, and they shall tie him to a post, an asti thick if the wood be hard, two astis thick if it be soft. To that post they shall tie him; by the two sides of the collar they shall tie him.

38.'If they shall not do so, and the scentless dog fall into a hole, or a well, or a precipice, or a river, or a canal, and he be wounded and die thereof, they shall be Peshotanus.

VI.

39.'The dog, O Spitama Zarathustra! I, Ahura Mazda, have made self-clothed and self-shod, watchful, wakeful, and sharp-toothed, born to take his food from man and to watch over man's goods. I, Ahura Mazda, have made the dog strong of body against the evil-doer, and watchful over your goods, when he is of sound mind.

40.'And whosoever shall awake at his voice, neither shall the thief nor the wolf steal anything from his house, without his being warned; the wolf shall be smitten and torn to pieces; he is driven away, he flees away.'

VII.

41.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which of the two wolves deserves more to be killed, the one that is born of a he-dog and of a she-wolf, or the one that is born of a she-dog and of a he-wolf? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Of these two wolves, the one that is born of a he-dog and of a she-wolf deserves more to be killed than the one that is born of a she-dog and of a he-wolf.

42.'For there are born of a he-dog and of a she-wolf such dogs as fall on the shepherd's dog, on the house dog, on the Vohunazga dog, on the trained dog, and destroy the folds; such dogs are born as are more murderous, more mischievous, more destructive to the folds than any other dogs.

43.'And there are born of a he-dog and of a she-wolf such wolves as fall on the shepherd's dog, on the house dog, on the Vohunazga dog, on the trained dog, and destroy the folds; such wolves are born as are more murderous, more mischievous, more destructive to the folds than any other wolves.

VIII.

44.'A dog has the characters of eight different sorts of people: 'He has the character of a priest,

'He has the character of a warrior,

'He has the character of a husbandman,

'He has the character of a strolling singer,

'He has the character of a thief,

'He has the character of a wild beast,

'He has the character of a courtesan,

'He has the character of a child.

45.'He eats broken food, like a priest; he is grateful, like a priest; he is easily satisfied, like a priest; he wants only a small piece of bread, like a priest; in these things he is like unto a priest. 'He marches in front, like a warrior; he fights for the beneficent cow, like a warrior; he goes first out of the house, like a warrior; in these things he is like unto a warrior.

46.'He is watchful and sleeps lightly, like a husbandman; he goes first out of the house, like a husbandman; he returns last into the house, like a husbandman; in these things he is like unto a husbandman. 'He sings like a strolling singer; he is intrusive, like a strolling singer; he is meagre, like a strolling singer; he is poor, like a strolling singer; in these things he is like unto a strolling singer.

47. ' He likes darkness, like a thief; he prowls about in darkness, like a thief; he is a shameless eater, like a thief; he is an unfaithful keeper, like a thief; in these things he is like unto a thief. 'He likes darkness, like a wild beast; he prowls about in darkness, like a wild beast; he is a shameless eater, like a wild beast; he is an unfaithful keeper, like a wild beast; in these things he is like unto a wild beast.

48.'He sings, like a courtezan; he is intrusive, like a courtezan; he walks about the roads, like a courtezan; he is meagre, like a courtezan; he is poor, like a courtezan; in these things he is like unto a courtezan. ' He likes sleeping, like a child; he is apt to run away, like a child; he is full of tongue, like a child; he goes on all fours, like a child; in these things he is like unto a child.

IX.

49.'If those two dogs of mine, the shepherd's dog and the house dog, pass by the house of any of my faithful people, let them never be kept away from it. 'For no house could subsist on the earth made by Ahura, but for those two dogs of mine, the shepherd's dog and the house dog.'

X.

50.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When a dog dies, with marrow and seed dried up, where to does his ghost go?

51.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It passes to the spring of the waters, O Spitama Zarathustra! and there out of every thousand dogs and every thousand she-dogs, two water dogs are formed, a water dog and a water she-dog

52.'He who kills a water dog brings about a drought that dries up pastures. Before that time, O Spitama Zarathustra! sweetness and fatness would flow out from that land and from those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass.'

53.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When are sweetness and fatness to come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass?

54.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Sweetness and fatness will never come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass, until the murderer of the water dog has been smitten to death and the holy soul of the dog has been offered up a sacrifice, for three days and three nights with fire blazing, with baresma tied up, and with Haoma uplifted

56.'Then sweetness and fatness will come back again to that land and to those fields, with health and healing, with fulness and increase and growth, and a growing of corn and grass.'

FARGARD XIV

This Fargard is nothing more than an appendix to the last clauses in the preceding Fargard (§ 50 seq.) How the murder of a water dog may be atoned for is described in it at full length. As the water dog is the holiest of all dogs, and, as it were, a link between the dog and God, the process of atonement must be one of an extraordinary character. It is this chapter, more than any other, which may make it doubtful whether the legislation of the Vendidad has ever existed as real and living law. See, however, Introduction V, 20.

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Ahura Mazda, most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! He who smites one of those water dogs that are born one from a thousand dogs and a thousand she-dogs', so that he gives up the ghost and the soul parts from the body, what is the penalty that he shall pay?'

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'He shall pay ten thousand stripes with the Aspae-astra, ten thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana. 'He shall godly and piously bring unto the fire of Ahura Mazda ten thousand loads of hard, well dried, well examined wood, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).

3. 'He shall godly and piously bring unto the fire of Ahura Mazda ten thousand loads of soft wood, of Urvasna, Vohu-gaona, Vohu-kereti, Hadha-naepata, or any sweet-scented plant, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).

4. 'He shall godly and piously tie and consecrate ten thousand bundles of baresma; he shall offer up to the good waters ten thousand Zaothra libations with the Haoma and the sacred meat', cleanly prepared and well strained, cleanly prepared and well strained by a pious man, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).

5. 'He shall kill ten thousand snakes of those that go upon the belly; he shall kill ten thousand snakes of those that have the shape of a dog; he shall kill ten thousand tortoises; he shall kill ten thousand land frogs; he shall kill ten thousand water frogs; he shall kill ten thousand corn-carrying ants; he shall kill ten thousand ants of those that bite and dig holes and work mischief

6. 'He shall kill ten thousand earth 'Worms; he shall kill ten thousand horrid flies 'He shall fill up ten thousand holes for the unclean 'He shall godly and piously give to godly men twice seven sets of implements for the fire, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog), namely:

7. 'Two (loads of the) proper materials for fire; a broom; a pair of tongs; a pair of round bellows extended at the bottom, contracted at the top; an adze with a sharp edge and a sharp-pointed handle', a saw with sharp teeth and a sharp-pointed handle, by means of which the worshippers of Mazda procure wood for the fire of Ahura Mazda.

8. 'He shall godly and piously give to godly men a set of the priestly instruments of which the priests make use, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog), namely: The Astra, the meat-vessel, the Paitidana, the Khrafstraghna, the Sraosho-karana, the cup for the Myazda, the cups for the juice, the mortar made according to the rules, the Haoma cups, and the baresma.

9. 'He shall godly and piously give to godly men a set of all the war implements of which the warriors make use, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog); the first being a javelin, the second a knife, the third a club, the fourth a bow, the fifth a quiver with shoulder-belt and thirty brass-headed arrows, the

sixth a sling with armstring and with thirty sling stones, the seventh a cuirass, the eighth a hauberk u, the ninth a tunic, the tenth a helmet, the eleventh a girdle, the twelfth a pair of greavesu.

10.'He shall godly and piously give to godly men a set of all the implements of which the husbandmen make use, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog), namely: A plough with share and yoke, an ox whip, a mortar of stone, a hand-mill for grinding corn,

11.'A spade for digging and tilling; one measure of silver and one measure of gold.' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How much silver? Ahura Mazda answered: 'The price of a stallion.' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How much gold? Ahura Mazda answered: 'The price of a camel.

12.'He shall godly and piously procure a rill of running water for godly husbandmen, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How large is the rill? Ahura Mazda answered: ' The depth of a dog, and the breadth of a dog

13.'He shall godly and piously give a piece of arable land to godly men, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How large is the piece of land? Ahura Mazda answered: 'As much as can be watered with such a rill on both sides

14.'He shall godly and piously procure for godly men a house with ox-stalls, with nine hathras and nine nematas, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How large is the house? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Twelve Vitaras in the largest part of the house, nine Vitaras in the middle part, six Vitaras in the smallest part. ' He shall godly and piously give to godly men godly beds with cushions, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).

15.'He shall godly and piously give to a godly man a virgin maid, whom-no man has known, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog).' O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What maid? Ahura Mazda answered: 'A sister or a daughter of his, at the age of puberty, with ear-rings in her ears, and past her fifteenth year.

16.'He shall godly and piously give to holy men twice seven head of small cattle, as an atonement unto the soul (of the water dog). 'He shall bring up twice seven whelps. 'He shall throw twice seven bridges over canals.

17.'He shall put into repair twice nine stables that are out of repair. 'He shall cleanse twice nine dogs from skin humors, hair wax, vermin', and all the diseases that are produced on the body of a dog. 'He shall treat twice nine godly men to their fill of meat, bread, strong drink, and wine.

18.'This is the atonement, this is the penalty that he shall undergo to atone for the deed that he has done. 'If he shall undergo it, he shall enter the world of the holy ones: if he shall not undergo it, he shall fall down into the world of the wicked, into that dark world, made of darkness, the offspring of darkness.'

FARGARD XV

I (1-8).On five sins the commission of which makes the sinner a Peshotanu.

II (9-19).On unlawful unions and attempts to procure miscarriage.

III (20-45).On the treatment of a bitch big with young.

IV (46-51).On the breeding of dogs.

I.

1.How many are the sins that men commit and that, being committed and not confessed, nor atoned for, make their committer a Peshotanu?

2.Ahura Mazda answered: 'There are five such sins, O holy Zarathustra! It is the first of these sins that men commit when a man teaches one of the faithful a foreign, wrong creed, a foreign, wrong law, and he does so with a full knowledge and conscience of the sin: this is a sin that makes him a Peshotanu.

3.'It is the second of these sins that men commit when a man gives too hard bone~ or too hot food to a shepherd's dog or to a house dog;

4.'If the bones stick in the dog's teeth or stop in his throat, or if the hot food burn his mouth or his tongue, so that mischief follows therefrom, and the dog dies, this is a sin that makes the man a Peshotanu

5.'It is the third of these sins that men commit when a man smites a bitch big with young or affrights her by running after her, with shouting or with clapping of hands

6.'If the bitch fall into a hole, or a well, or a precipice, or a river, or a canal, so that mischief follows therefrom, and she dies, this is a sin that makes the man a Peshotanu

7.'It is the fourth of these sins that men commit when a man has intercourse with a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary' course or at the usual period: this is a sin that makes him a Peshotanu

8.'It is the fifth of these sins that men commit when a man has intercourse with a woman quick with child, whether the milk has already come to her breasts or has not yet come: if mischief follow therefrom, and she die, this is a sin that makes the man a Peshotanu

II.

9.'If a man come near unto a damsel, either dependent on the chief of the family or not dependent, either delivered unto a husband or not delivered, and she conceives by him, let her not, from dread of the people, produce in herself the menses, against the course of nature, by means of water and plants

10.'And if the damsel, from dread of the people, shall produce in herself the menses against the course of nature, by means of water and plants, there is a sin upon her head

11.'If a man come near unto a damsel, either dependent on the chief of the family or not dependent, either delivered unto a husband or not delivered, and she conceives by him, let her not, from dread of the people, destroy the fruit in her womb.

12.'And if the damsel, from dread of the people, shall destroy the fruit in her womb, the sin is on both the father and herself, the murder is on both the father and herself; both the father and herself shall pay the penalty for willful murder

13.'If a man come near unto a damsel, either dependent on the chief of the family or not dependent, either delivered unto a husband or not delivered, and she conceives by him, and she says, "I have

conceived by thee; "and he replies, "Go then to the old woman and apply to her that she may procure thee miscarriage;"

14. 'And the damsel goes to the old woman and applies to her that she may procure her miscarriage; and the old woman brings her some Banga, or Shaeta, or Ghnana, or Fraspata, or some other of the drugs that produce miscarriage and [the man says], "Cause thy fruit to perish!" and she causes her fruit to perish; the sin is on the head of all three, the man, the damsel, and the old woman.

III.

15. 'If a man come near unto a damsel, either dependent on the chief of the family or not dependent, either delivered unto a husband or not delivered, and she conceives by him, so long shall he support her, until the child is born.

16. 'If he shall not support her, so that the child comes to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

17. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If she be near her time and be lying on the high road, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

18. Ahura Mazda answered: 'If a man come near unto a damsel, either dependent on the chief of the family or not dependent, either delivered unto a husband or not delivered, and she conceives by him, so long shall he support her, until the child is born

19. 'If he shall not support her... 'It lies with the faithful to look in the same way after every pregnant female, either two-footed or four-footed, either woman or bitch.'

20. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If (a bitch) be near her time and be lying on the high road, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

21. Ahura Mazda answered: 'He whose house stands nearest, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her until the whelps are born.

22. 'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

23. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in a camel-stall, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

24. Ahura Mazda answered: 'He who built the camel-stall or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born

25. 'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

26. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in a horse stall, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

27. Ahura Mazda answered: 'He who built the horse-stall or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born.

28.'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

29.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in an ox-stall, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

30.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He who built the ox-stall or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born.

31.'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

32.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in a sheep-fold, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

33.Ahura Mazda answered: ' He who built the sheep-fold or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born.

34.'If he shall not support her so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

35.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying on the earth-wall, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

36.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He who erected the wall or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born.

37.'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

38.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in the moat, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

39.Ahura Mazda answered: 'He who dug the moat or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his; so long shall he support her, until the whelps are born

40.'If he shall not support her, so that the whelps come to mischief, for want of proper support, he shall pay the penalty for willful murder.'

41.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If a bitch be near her time and be lying in the middle of a pasture-field, which is the worshipper of Mazda that shall support her?

42.Ahura Mazda answered: ' He who sowed the pasture-field or who holds it, the care of supporting her is his.

43.'He shall with kind charity take her to rest upon a litter of any foliage fit for a litter; so long shall he support her, until the young dogs are capable of self-defense and self-subsistence.'

44.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! When are the dogs capable of self-defense and self-subsistence?

45. Ahura Mazda answered: 'When they are able to run about in a circuit of twice seven houses around. Then they may be let loose, whether it be winter or summer. 'Young dogs ought to be supported for six months, children for seven years. 'Atar, the son of Ahura Mazda, watches as well (over a pregnant bitch) as he does over a woman.'

IV.

46. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If worshippers of Mazda want to have a bitch so covered that the offspring shall be one of a strong nature, what shall they do?

47. Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall dig a hole in the earth, in the middle of the fold, half a foot deep if the earth be hard, half the height of a man if the earth be soft.

48. 'They shall first tie up the bitch there, far from children and from the Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, and they shall watch by her until a dog comes there from anywhere. They shall afterwards let another dog come near her, and then a third besides, each being kept apart from the former, lest they should assail one another.

49. 'The bitch being thus covered by three dogs, grows big with young, and the milk comes to her teats and she brings forth a young one that is born from (three) dogs.'

50. He who smites a bitch who has been covered by three dogs, and who has already milk, and who shall bring forth a young one born from (three) dogs, what is the penalty that he shall pay?

51. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Seven hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seven hundred stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

FARGARD XVI

I (1-11). On the uncleanness of women during their sickness.

II (11-12). How it can be removed.

III (13-18). Sundry laws relating to the same matter. See Introd. V, 12

I.

1. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! If there be in the house of a worshipper of Mazda a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, what shall the worshippers of Mazda do?

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'They shall clear the way of the wood there, both in growing trees and in logs; they shall strew dry dust on the ground; and they shall erect a building there, higher than the house by a half, or a third, or a fourth, or a fifth part, lest her look should fall upon the fire.'

3. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from the fire? How far from the water? How far from the consecrated bundles of baresma? How far from the faithful?

4. Ahura Mazda answered: ' Fifteen paces from the fire, fifteen paces from the water, fifteen paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma, three paces from the faithful.'

5. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! How far from her shall he stay, who brings food to a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period?

6. Ahura Mazda answered: ' Three paces from her shall he stay, who brings food to a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period.' In what kind of vessels shall he bring the food? I In what kind of vessels shall he bring the bread? 'In vessels of brass, or of lead, or of any common metal.'

7. How much food shall he bring to her? How much bread shall he bring? '(Only) two danares of long bread, and one danare of milk pap, lest she should gather strength. 'If a child has just touched her, they shall first wash his hands and then his body

8. 'If she still see blood after three nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until four nights have passed. If she still see blood after four nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until five nights have passed.

9. 'If she still see blood after five nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until six nights have passed. 'If she still see blood after six nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until seven nights have passed.

10. 'If she still see blood after seven nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until eight nights have passed. 'If she still see blood after eight nights have passed, she shall sit in the place of infirmity until nine nights have passed.

11. 'If she still see blood after nine nights have passed, this is a work of the Daevas which they have performed for the worship and glorification of the Daevas

II.

'The worshippers of Mazda shall clear the way¹¹ of the wood there, both in growing trees and in logs;

12. 'They shall dig three holes in the earth, and they shall wash the woman with gomez by two of those holes and with water by the third. They shall kill Khrafstras, to wit: two hundred corn-carrying ants, if it be summer; two hundred of any other sort of the Khrafstras made by Angra Mainyu, if it be winter.'

III.

13. If a worshipper of Mazda shall suppress the issue of a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'He is a Peshotanu: two hundred stripes with the Aspahe-astra, two hundred stripes with the Sraoshokarana.'

14. O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One I If a man shall again and again willfully touch the body of a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, so that the ordinary issue turns to the dye of the unusual one, or the unusual issue to the dye of the ordinary one, what is the penalty that he shall pay?

15. Ahura Mazda answered: 'For the first time he comes near unto her, for the first time he lies by her, thirty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, thirty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; for the second time he comes near unto her, for the second time he lies by her, fifty stripes with the Aspahe-astra, fifty stripes with the Sraosho-karana; for the third time he comes near unto her, for the third time he lies by her, seventy stripes with the Aspahe-astra, seventy stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

16. For the fourth time he comes near unto her, for the fourth time he lies by her, if he shall press the body under her clothes, if he shall press the unclean thigh, but without sexual intercourse, what is the penalty that he shall pay? Ahura Mazda answered: 'Ninety stripes with the Aspahe-astra, ninety stripes with the Sraosho-karana.'

17. 'Whosoever shall lie in sexual intercourse with a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, does no better deed than if he should burn the corpse of his own son, born of his own body and dead of naeza, and drop its fat into the fire'

18. 'All such sinners, embodiments of the Drug, are scornors of the law: all scornors of the law are rebels against the Lord: all rebels against the Lord are ungodly men; and any ungodly man shall pay for it with his life.'

FARGARD XVII

HAIR AND NAILS

Anything that has been separated from the body of man is considered dead matter (Introd. V, 12), and is accordingly supposed to fall into the possession of the demon and to become the abode of death and uncleanness. Therefore, hair and nails, as soon as cut off, are at once the property of Ahriman, and the demon has to be driven away from them by spells, in the same way as he is from the bodies of the dead. They are withdrawn from his power by the recital of certain prayers, and by being deposited in the earth inside consecrated circles, which are drawn around them as an entrenchment against the fiend (see above, p. 1221 n.1). This chapter, which has given full scope to the ironical humor of many, is an invaluable document in the eyes of the mythologist, as he finds in it, if not the origin and explanation, at least the oldest record of world-wide superstitions. Not only in Bombay, but all over the world, people are found who believe that hair and nails are weapons in the hands of the evil one. The Esthonians, on the shores of the Baltic, take the utmost care not to drop the parings of their nails on the ground, lest the devil should pick them up, to make a visor to his cap, which will give him full power to injure men, unless the sign of the cross has been made over them. The Gauchos in the Chilian pampas fear to throw their hair to the winds, but deposit it in holes dug in a wall. In Liege good people are advised not to throw away their hair, nor to leave it in the teeth of the comb, lest a witch take hold of it and cast a spell over them

I.

1.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Ahura Mazda, most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Which is the most deadly deed whereby a man increases most the baleful strength of the Daevas, as he would do by offering them a sacrifice?'

2.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is when a man here below combing his hair or shaving it off, or paring off his nails drops them ' in a hole or in a crack

3.'Then for want of the lawful rites being observed, Daevas are produced in the earth; for want of the lawful rites being observed, those Khrafstras are produced in the earth which men call lice, and which eat up the corn in the corn-field and the clothes in the wardrobe.

4.'Therefore, O Zarathustra! whenever here below thou shalt comb thy hair or shave it off, or pare off thy nails, thou shalt take them away ten paces from the faithful, twenty paces from the fire, thirty paces from the water, fifty paces from the consecrated bundles of baresma.

5.'Then thou shalt dig a hole, a disti deep if the earth be hard, a vitasti deep if it be soft; thou shalt take the hair down there and thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting words: "Out of him by his piety Mazda made the plants grow up."

6.'Thereupon thou shalt draw three furrows with a knife of metal around the hole, or six furrows or nine, and thou shalt chant the Ahuna-Vairya three times, or sue, or nine.

II.

7.'For the nails, thou shalt dig a hole, out of the house, as deep as the top joint of the little finger; thou shalt take the nails down there and thou shalt say aloud these fiend-smiting words: "The words that are heard from the pious in holiness and good thought."

8.'Then thou shalt draw three furrows with a knife of metal around the hole, or six furrows or nine, and thou shalt chant the Ah una-Vairya three times, or six, or nine.

9.'And then: "Look here, O Asho-zusta bird! here are the nails for thee: look at the nails beret May they be for thee so many spears, knives, bows, falcon-winged arrows, and sling-stones against the Mazainya Daevas!"

10.'If those nails have not been dedicated (to the bird), they shall be in the hands of the Mazainya Daevas so many spears, knives, bows, falcon-winged arrows, and sling stones (against the Mizainya Daevas)

11.'All such sinners, embodiments of the Drug, are scorners of the law: all scorners of the law are rebels against the Lord: all rebels against the Lord are ungodly men; and any ungodly man shall pay for it with his life.'

FARGARD XVIII

I (1-13).On the unworthy priest and enticers to heresy.

II (14-29).The holiness of the cock.

III (30--60).The four paramours of the Drug.

IV (61-71).On unlawful lusts. The text and the Pahlavi commentary of this Fargard are translated in Haug's Essays, pp. 243 seq., 364 seq.

I.

1.'There is many a one, O holy Zarathustra!' said Ahura Mazda, 'who wears a Paitidana, but who has not girded his loins with the law; when such a man says, "I am an Athravan," he lies; do not call him an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra!' thus said Ahura Mazda.

2.'He holds a Khrafstraghna in his hand, but he has not girded his loins with the law; when he says, " I am an Athravan," he lies; do not call him an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra! ' thus said Ahura Mazda.

3.'He holds a twig in his hand, but he has not girded his loins with the law; when he says, " I am an Athravan," he lies; do not call him an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra! ' thus said Ahura Mazda.

4.'He wields the Astra mairya, but he has not girded his loins with the law; when he says, " I am an Athravan," he lies; do not call him an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra! ' thus said Ahura Mazda.

5.'He who sleeps on throughout the night, who does not perform the Yasna nor chant the hymns, who does not worship by word or by deed, who does neither learn nor teach, with a longing for (everlasting) life, he lies when he says, "I am an Athravan," do not call him an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra! ' thus said Ahura Mazda.

6.'Him thou shalt call an Athravan, O holy Zarathustra! who throughout the night sits up and demands of the holy Wisdom, which makes man free from anxiety, with dilated heart, and cheerful at the head of the Kinvat bridge', and which makes him reach that world, that holy world, that excellent world, the world of paradise.

7.'(Therefore) demand of me, thou upright one! of me, who am the Maker, the best of all beings, the most knowing, the most pleased in answering what is asked of me; demand of me, that thou mayst be the better, that thou mayst be the happier.'

8.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! What is it that makes the unseen power of Death increase?'

9.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the man that teaches a wrong law; it is the man who continues for three years without wearing the sacred girdle', without chanting the Githas, without worshipping the good waters.

10.'And he who should set that man at liberty, when bound in prison, does no better deed than if he should flay a man alive and cut off his head

11.'The blessing uttered on a wicked, ungodly Ashemaogha does not go past the mouth (of the blesser); the blessing for two Ashemaoghas does not go past his tongue; the blessing for three is no word at all; the blessing for four is a curse against himself.

12.'Whosoever should give some Haoma juice to a wicked, ungodly Ashemaogha, or some Myazda consecrated with blessings, does no better deed than if he should lead a thousand horse against the cities of the worshippers of Mazda, and should slaughter the men thereof, and drive off the cattle as plunder.

II.

13.'Demand of me, thou upright one! of me, who am the Maker, the best of all beings, the most knowing, the most pleased in answering what is asked of me; demand of me, that thou mayst be the better, that thou mayst be the happier.'

14.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'Who is the Sraosha-varez of Sraosha? the holy, strong Sraosha, who is the incarnate Word, a mighty speared and lordly god.'

15.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the bird named Parodars, which ill-speaking people call KahrkatAs, O holy Zarathustra! the bird that lifts up his voice against the mighty dawn:

16.""Arise, O men! recite the Ashem yad vahistem that smites down the Daevas Lo! here is Bushyasta, the long-handed, coming upon you, who lulls to sleep again the whole living world, as soon as it has awoken: 'Sleep!' she says, 'sleep on, O man! the time is not yet come.' "

17.'For the three excellent things be never slack, namely, good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; for the three abominable things be ever slack, namely, bad thoughts, bad words, and bad deeds."

18.'In the first part of the night, Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, calls the master of the house for help, saying:

19.""Up I arise, thou master of the house! put on thy girdle on thy clothes, wash thy hands, take wood, bring it unto me, and let me burn bright with the clean wood, carried by thy well-washed hands. Here comes Azi, made by the Daevas, who is about to strive against me, and wants to put out my life."

20.'In the second part of the night, Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, calls the husbandman for help, saying:

21.""Up! arise, thou husbandman! Put on thy girdle on thy clothes, wash thy hands, take wood, bring it unto me, and let me burn bright with the clean wood, carried by thy well-washed hands. Here comes Azi, made by the Daevas, who is about to strive against me, and wants to put out my life."

22.'In the third part of the night, Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, calls the holy Sraosha for help, saying: "Come thou, holy, tall-formed Sraosha, [then he brings unto me some clean wood with his well-washed hands]: here comes Azi, made by the Daevas, who is about to strive against me, and wants to put out my life."

23.'And then the holy Sraosha wakes up the bird named Parodars, which ill-speaking people call Kahrkatas, and the bird lifts up his voice against the mighty dawn:

24. "Arise, O men! recite the Ashem yad vahistem that smites down the Daevas. Lo! here is Bushyasta, the long-handed, coming upon you, who lulls to sleep again the whole living world as soon as it has awoke: 'Sleep!' she says, 'sleep on, O man! the time is not yet come.'"

25. "For the three excellent things be never slack, namely, good thoughts, good words, and good deeds; for the three abominable things be ever slack, namely, bad thoughts, bad words, and bad deeds."

26. 'And then bed-fellows address one another: " Rise up, here is the cock calling me up." Whichever of the two first gets up shall first enter paradise: whichever of the two shall first, with well-washed hands, bring clean wood unto the Fire, the son of Ahura Mazda, the Fire, well pleased with him and not angry, and fed as it required, will thus bless him:

27. "May herds of oxen grow for thee, and increase of sons: may thy mind be master of its vow, may thy soul be master of its vow, and mayst thou live on in the joy of the soul all the nights of thy life." 'This is the blessing which the Fire speaks unto him who brings him dry wood, well examined by the light of the day, well cleansed with godly intent.

28. 'And whosoever will kindly and piously present one of the faithful with a pair of these my Parodars birds, a male and a female, it is as though he had given a house with a hundred columns, a thousand beams, ten thousand large windows, ten thousand small windows.

29. 'And whosoever shall give to my Parodars bird his fill of meat, I, Ahura Mazda, need not interrogate him any longer; he shall directly go to paradise.'

III.

30. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! Thou then, alone in the material world, dost bear offspring without any male coming unto thee?'

31. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! It is not so, nor do I, alone in the material world, bear offspring without any male coming unto me.

32. 'There are four males who are mine. 'And they make me conceive progeny as other males make their females.'

33. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! Who is the first of those males of thine?'

34. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! He is the first of my males who, being entreated by one of the faithful, does not give him anything, be it ever so little, of the riches he has treasured up

35. 'That man makes me conceive progeny as other males make their females.'

36. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! What is the thing that can counteract that?'

37. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! This is the thing that counteracts it, namely, when a man unasked, kindly and piously, gives to one of the faithful something, be it ever so little, of the riches he has treasured up.'

38. 'He does thereby as thoroughly destroy the fruit of my womb as a four-footed wolf does, who tears the child out of a mother's womb.'

39. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! Who is the second of those males of thine?'

40. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! He is the second of my males who, making water, lets it fall along the upper forepart of his foot.'

41. 'That man makes me conceive progeny as other males make their females.'

42. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! What is the thing that can counteract that?'

43. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! This is the thing that counteracts it, namely, when the man rising up and stepping three steps further off, shall say three Ahuna-Vairya, two humatanam, three hukhshathrotemam, and then chant the Ahuna-Vairya and offer up one Yenhe hatam.'

44. 'He does thereby as thoroughly destroy the fruit of my womb as a four-footed wolf does, who tears the child out of a mother's womb.'

45. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! Who is the third of those males of thine?'

46. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! He is the third of my males who during his sleep emits seed.'

47. 'That man makes me conceive progeny as other males make their females.'

48. The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! What is the thing that can counteract that?'

49. Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! this is the thing that counteracts it, namely, if the man, when he has risen from sleep, shall say three Ahuna-Vairya, two humatanam, three hukhshathrotemam, and then chant the Ahuna-Vairya and offer up one Yenhe hatam.'

50. 'He does thereby as thoroughly destroy the fruit of my womb as a four-footed wolf does who tears the child out of a mother's womb.'

51. Then he shall speak unto Spenta Armaiti, saying: 'O Spenta Armaiti, this man do I deliver unto thee; this man deliver thou back unto me, against the mighty day of resurrection; deliver him back as one who knows the Gathas, who knows the Yasna, and the revealed law, a wise and clever man, who is the Word incarnate.'

52. 'Then thou shalt call his name "Fire-creature, Fire-seed, Fire-offspring, Fire-land," or any name wherein is the word Fire.'

53.The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug! Who is the fourth of those males of thine?'

54.Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! This one is my fourth male who, either man or woman, being more than fifteen years of age, walks without wearing the sacred girdle and the sacred shirt

55.'At the fourth step "we Daevas, at once, wither him even to the tongue and the marrow, and he goes thenceforth with power to destroy the world of the holy spirit, and he destroys it like the Yatus and the Zandas.'

56.The holy Sraosha asked the Drug, with his club uplifted against her: 'O thou wretched and wicked Drug, what is the thing that can counteract that?'

57.Then the Drug demon, the guileful one, answered: 'O holy, tall-formed Sraosha! There is no means of counteracting it;

58.'When a man or a woman, being more than fifteen years of age, walks without wearing the sacred girdle or the sacred shirt.

59.'At the fourth step we Daevas, at once, wither him even to the tongue and the marrow, and he goes thenceforth with power to destroy the world of the holy spirit, and he destroys it like the Yatus and the Zandas.'

IV.

60.Demand of me, thou upright one! of me who am the Maker, the best of all beings, the most knowing, the most pleased in answering what is asked of me; demand of me that thou mayst be the better, that thou mayst be the happier.

61.Zarathustca asked Ahura Mazda: 'Who grieves thee with the sorest grief? Who pains thee with the sorest pain?'

62.Ahura Mazda answered: 'It is the Gahi, O spitama Zarathustra! who goes a-whoring after the faithful and the unfaithful, after the worshippers of Mazda and the worshippers of the Daevas, after the wicked and the righteous

63.'Her look dries up one third of the mighty floods that run from the mountains; her look withers one third of the beautiful, golden hued, growing plants;

64.'Her look withers one-third of the grass wherewith Spenta Armaiti is clad, and her touch withers in the faithful one-third of his good thoughts, of his good words, of his good deeds, one-third of his strength of his fiend-killing power, and of his holiness

65. 'Verily I say unto thee, O Spitama Zarathustra! such creatures ought to be killed even more than gliding snakes", than howling wolves, than the wild she-wolf that falls upon the fold, or than the she-frog that falls upon the waters with her thousandfold brood.'

66. Demand of me, thou upright one! of me who am the Maker, the best of all beings, the most knowing, the most pleased in answering what is asked of me; demand of me that thou mayst be the better, that thou mayst be the happier.

67, 68. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'If a man shall come unto a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, and he does so wittingly and knowingly, and she allows it willfully, wittingly, and knowingly, what is the atonement for it, what is the penalty that he shall pay to atone for the deed they have done?'

69. Ahura Mazda answered: ' If a man shall come unto a woman who has an issue of blood, either out of the ordinary course or at the usual period, and he does so wittingly and knowingly, and she allows it willfully, wittingly, and knowingly;

70. 'He shall slay a thousand head of small cattle; he shall godly and piously offer up to the fire the entrails thereof together with Zaothra-libations; he shall bring the shoulder bones to the good waters

71. 'He shall godly and piously bring unto the fire a thousand loads of soft wood, of Urvasna, Vohu-gaona, Vohu-kereti, Hadha-naepata, or of any sweet-scented plant

72. 'He shall tie and consecrate a thousand bundles of baresma; he shall godly and piously offer up to the good waters a thousand Zaothra-libations, together with the Haoma and the meat, cleanly prepared and well strained by a pious man, together with the roots of the tree known as Hadha-naepata

73. 'He shall kill a thousand snakes of those that go upon the belly, two thousand of the other kind: he shall kill a thousand land frogs and two thousand water frogs; he shall kill a thousand corn-carrying ants and two thousand of the other kind

74. 'He shall throw thirty bridges over canals; he shall undergo a thousand stripes with the Aspahe-astra, a thousand stripes with the Sraosho-karana

75. 'This is the atonement, this is the penalty that he shall pay to atone for the deed that he has done

76. 'If he shall pay it, he shall enter the world of the holy ones; if he shall not pay it, he shall fall down into the world of the wicked, into that dark world, made of darkness, the offspring of darkness.'

FARGARD XIX

I (1-11). Angra Mainyu attempts to kill Zarathustra, and, when he fails, tempts him. Zarathustra withstands both assaults with weapons both material and spiritual.

II (11-43). Zarathustra applies to Ahura Mazda for a revelation of the law. He is taught how the fiend may be repelled, how the creation of Mazda is to be worshipped, how uncleanness is to be washed away, and what becomes of the soul after death.

III (43-47).Angra Mainyu and his host, driven to despair, and feeling themselves powerless, flee down into hell. This chapter may be entitled 'The Revelation,' and considered as the framework of the Vendidad, the remainder of which should have its place between the first and the third part; as the first part shows the fiend's struggles to prevent the revelation, and the third shows the effects of it; the second being, as it were, an abstract of the law, an abridged Vendidad. The text and the Pahlavi commentary of this Fargard are translated in Haug's Essays, p. 253 seq., p. 333 seq., and P. 379 seq.

I.

1.From the region of the north, from the regions of the north, forth rushed Angra Mainyu, the deadly, the Daeva of the Davas. And thus spake the guileful one, he the evil-doer Angra Mainyu, the deadly: ' Drug, rush down upon him! destroy the holy Zarathustra! 'The Drug came rushing along, the demon Buiti, the unseen death, the hell-born.

2.Zarathustra chanted aloud the Ahuna-Vairya: 'The will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor.' (He added): 'Offer up prayers to the good waters of the good Daitya! 'Profess the law of the worshippers of Mazda! ' The Drug dismayed, rushed away, the demon Buiti, the unseen death, the hell-born.

3.And the Drug, the guileful one, said unto Angra Mainyu: 'O baneful Angra Mainyu! I see no way to kill him, so great is the glory of the holy Zarathustra.' Zarathustra saw (all this) from within his soul: 'The evil-doing Daevas and Drvants (thought he) take counsel together for my death.'

4.Up started Zarathustra, forward went Zarathustra, unshaken by the evil spirit, by the hardness of his malignant riddles, swinging stones in his hand, stones as big as a house, which he obtained from the Maker, Ahura Mazda, he the holy Zarathustra. 'At what on this wide, round earth, whose ends lie afar, at what dost thou swing (those stones), thou who standest by the river Darega', upon the mountains, in the mansion of Pourusaspa? '

5.Thus Zarathustra answered Angra Mainyu: 'O evil-doer, Angra Mainyu! I will smite the creation of the Daeva; I will smite the Nasu, a creature of the Daeva; I will smite the Pairika Knathaiti, till the fiend-smiter Saoshyant come up to life out of the lake Kasava, from the region of the dawn, from the regions of the dawn.'

6.Again to him said the guileful one, the Maker of the evil world, Angra Mainyu: 'Do not destroy my creatures, O holy Zarathustra! Thou art the son of Pourusaspa, just born of thy mother. Renounce the good law of the worshippers of Mazda, and thou shalt gain such a boon as the murderer gained, the ruler of the nations.'

7.Thus in answer to him said Spitama Zarathustra: 'No! never will I renounce the good law of the worshippers of Mazda, though my body, my life, my soul should burst!'

8.Again to him said the guileful one, the Maker of the evil world, Angra Mainyu: 'By whose Word wilt thou strike, by whose Word wilt thou repel, by whose weapon will the good creatures (strike and repel) my creation who am Angra Mainyu?'

9. Thus in answer to him said Spitama Zarathustra: 'The sacred mortar, the sacred cup, the Haoma, the Words taught by Mazda, these are my weapons, my best weapons! By this Word will I strike, by this Word will I repel, by this weapon the good creatures (will strike and repel thee), O evil-doer, Angra Mainyu! To me Spenta Mainyu gave it, he gave it to me in the boundless Time; to me the Amesha Spentas, the all-ruling, the all-beneficent, gave it.'

10. Zarathustra chanted aloud the Ahuna-Vairya. The holy Zarathustra said aloud: 'This I ask thee: teach me the truth, O Lord!'

II.

11. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Ahura Mazda, most beneficent spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! [he was sitting by the Darega, on the mountain, praying to Ahura Mazda, to the good Vohu-mano, to Asha Vahista, Khshathra Vairya, and Spenta Armaiti]

12. 'How shall I make the world free from that Drug, from the evil-doer Angra Mainyu? How shall I drive away direct defilement? How indirect defilement? How shall I drive the Nasu from the house of the worshippers of Mazda? How shall I cleanse the faithful man? How shall I cleanse the faithful woman?'

13. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! the good law of Mazda. 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! the Amesha Spentas who rule over the seven Karshvares of the earth. 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! the sovereign Heaven, the boundless Time", and Vayu, whose action is most high. 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! the powerful Wind, made by Mazda, and Spenta [Armaiti], the fair daughter of Ahura Mazda.

14. 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! my Fravashi, who am Ahura Mazda, the greatest, the best, the fairest of all beings, the most solid, the most intelligent, the best shapen, the highest in holiness, and whose soul is the holy Word! 'Invoke, O Zarathustra! this creation of mine, who am Ahura Mazda.'

15. Zarathustra took those words from me, (and said): 'I invoke the holy creation of Ahura Mazda. 'I invoke Mithra, the lord of wide pastures, a god armed with beautiful weapons, with the most glorious of all weapons, with the most fiend-smiting of all weapons. 'I invoke the holy, tall-formed Sraosha, who wields a club in his hand, to bear upon the heads of the fiends.

16. 'I invoke the most glorious holy Word. 'I invoke the sovereign Heaven, the boundless Time, and Vayu, whose action is most high. 'I invoke the mighty Wind, made by Mazda, and Spenta (Armaiti), the fair daughter of Ahura Mazda. 'I invoke the good law of Mazda, the fiend-destroying law of Zarathustra.'

17. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O Maker of the good world, Ahura Mazda! With what manner of sacrifice shall I worship, with what manner of sacrifice shall I worship and forward this creation of Ahura Mazda?'

18. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Go, O Spitama Zarathustra! towards that tree that is beautiful, high-growing, and mighty amongst the high-growing trees, and say thou these words: "Hail to thee! O good, holy tree, made by Mazda! Ashem vohu!"

19. 'Let the faithful man cut off a twig of baresma, long as a ploughshare, thick as a barley-corn. The faithful one, holding it in his left hand, shall not leave off keeping his eyes upon it', whilst he is offering up the

sacrifice to Ahura Mazda and to the Amesha-Spentas, and to the high and beautiful golden Haomas, and to Vohu-mano and to the good Rita, made by Mazda, holy and excellent.'

20.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O thou, all-knowing Ahura Mazda I thou art never asleep, never intoxicated, thou Ahura Mazda! Vohu-mano gets directly defiled: Vohu-mano gets indirectly defiled; the Daevas defile him from the bodies smitten by the Daevas: let Vohu-mano be made clean.'

21.Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thou shalt take some gomez from a bull ungelded and such as the law requires it; thou shalt take the man who is to be cleansed to the field made by Ahura', and the man that is to cleanse him shall draw the furrows

22.'He shall recite a hundred Ashem vohu: "Holiness is the best of all good. Happy, happy the man who is holy with perfect holiness!" 'He shall chant two hundred Ahuna-Vairya: " The will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor." 'He shall wash Vohu-mano four times with the gomez from the ox, and twice with the water made by Mazda

23.'Thus Vohu-mano shall be made clean, and clean shall be the man. Then he shall take up Vohu-mano with his left arm and his right, with his right arm and his left: and thou shalt lay down Vohu-mano under the mighty structure of the bright heavens, by the light of the stars made by the gods, until nine nights have passed away

24.'When nine nights have passed away, thou shalt bring libations unto the fire, thou shalt bring hardwood unto the fire, thou shalt bring incense of Vohu-gaona unto the fire, and thou shalt perfume Vohu-mano therewith

25.'Thus shall Vohu-mano become clean, thus shall the man be clean: he shall take up Vohu-mano with the right arm and the left, with the left arm and the right, and Vohu-mano' shall say aloud: Glory be to Ahura Mazda! Glory be to the Amesha-Spentas! Glory be to all the other holy beings." ' '

26.Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'O thou all-knowing Ahura Mazda: Should I urge upon the godly man, should I urge upon the godly woman, should I urge upon the wicked Daevas worshipper who lives in sin, that they have once to leave behind them the earth made by Ahura, that they have to leave the water that runs, the corn that grows, and all the rest of their wealth?' Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thou shouldst, O holy Zarathustra.'

27.O Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Where are the rewards given? Where does the rewarding take place? Where is the rewarding fulfilled? Where to do men come to take the reward that, in their life in the material world, they have won for their souls?

28.Ahura Mazda answered: 'When the man is dead, when his time is over, then the hellish, evil-doing Daevas assail him; and when the third night is gone, when the dawn appears and brightens up, and makes Mithra, the god with beautiful weapons, reach the all-happy mountains, and the sun is rising:

29.'Then the fiend, named Vizaresha, carries off in bonds the souls of the wicked Daeva-worshippers who live in sin. The soul enters the way made by Time, and open both to the wicked and to the righteous. At the head of the Kinvad bridge, the holy bridge made by Mazda, they ask for their spirits and souls the reward for the worldly goods which they gave away here below

30.'Then comes the well shapen, strong and tall-formed maid, with the dogs at her sides, one who can distinguish', who is graceful, who does what she wants, and is of high understanding. 'She makes the soul of the righteous one go up above the Hara-berezaiti; above the Kinvad bridge she places it in the presence of the heavenly gods themselves.

31.'Up rises Vohu-mano from his golden seat; Vohu-mano exclaims: "How hast thou come to us, thou holy one, from that decaying world into this undecaying one? "

32.'Gladly pass the souls of the righteous to the golden seat of Ahura Mazda, to the golden seat of the Amesha-Spentas, to the Garo-nmanem, the abode of Ahura Mazda, the abode of the Amesha-Spentas, the abode of all the other holy beings.

33.'As to the godly man that has been cleansed, the wicked evil-doing Daevas tremble at the perfume of his soul after death, as a sheep does on which a wolf is falling

34.'The souls of the righteous are gathered together there: Nairyō-sangha is with them; a friend of Ahura Mazda is Nairyō-sangha. 'Do thou thyself invoke, O Zarathustra! this world of Ahura Mazda.'

35.Zarathustra took those words from Ahura Mazda: ' I invoke the holy world, made by Ahura Mazda. ' I invoke the earth made by Ahura, the water made by Mazda, the holy trees. ' I invoke the sea Vouru-kasha. I invoke the shining sky. ' I invoke the eternal and sovereign luminous space

36.'I invoke the bright, all glorious, blissful abode of the holy ones. ' I invoke the Garo-nmanem, the abode of Ahura Mazda, the abode of the Amesha-Spentas, the abode of all the other holy beings. ' I invoke the sovereign place of eternal weal, and the Kinvad bridge made by Mazda.

37.'I invoke the good Saoka, whose looks go far and wide. 'I invoke the mighty Fravashis a of the righteous. ' I invoke the whole creation of weal. ' I invoke Verethraghna ', made by Ahura, who wears the glory made by Mazda 'I invoke Tistrya, the bright and glorious star, in the shape of a golden-horned bull.

38.'I invoke the holy, beneficent Gathas, who rule over the ratus: 'I invoke the Ahunavaiti Githa; 'I invoke the Ustavaiti Githa; 'I invoke the Spenta-mainyu Githa; 'I invoke the Vohu-khshathra Githa; 'I invoke the Vahistoisti Githa

39.'I invoke the Karshvares of Arzahe and Savahe; 'I invoke the Karshvares of Fradadhafshu and Vidadhafshu ; 'I invoke the Karshvares of Vourubaresti and Vouruzaresti ; 'I invoke the bright Hvaniratha; 'I invoke the bright, glorious Haetumant; ' I invoke the good Ashi; [' I invoke the good Kisti '] 'I invoke the most right Kista; 'I invoke the glory of the Aryan regions; 'I invoke the glory of the bright Yima, the great shepherd

40.'Let him be worshipped with sacrifice, let him be gladdened, gratified, and satisfied, the holy Sraosha, the tall-formed, fiend-smiting, holy Sraosha. 'Bring libations unto the Fire, bring hard wood unto the Fire, bring incense of Vohu-gaona unto the Fire. ' Offer up the sacrifice to the Vazista fire, which smites the fiend Spengaghra: bring unto it the cooked meat and the offerings of boiling milk

41.'Offer up the sacrifice to the holy Sraosha, that the holy Sraosha may smite down the fiend Kunda, who is drunken without drinking. He will fall upon the men of the Drug, the slothful ones ', the wicked Daeva-worshippers, who live in sin.

42. 'I invoke the Kara fish, who lives beneath waters in the bottom of the deep lakes. 'I invoke the ancient and sovereign Merezū, the greatest seat of battle in the creation of the two spirits. 'I invoke the seven bright Sraiva with their sons and their flocks.

III.

43. 'They run about to and fro, their minds waver to and fro, Angra Mainyu the deadly, the Daeva of the Daevas; Indra the Daeva, Siuru the Daeva, Naunghaithya the Daeva, Taurvi and Zairi, Aeshma of the wounding spear, Akatasha the Daeva, Zaurva ', baneful to the fathers, Buiti the Daeva, Driwi e the Daeva, Daiwi the Daeva, Kasvi the Daeva, Paitisha the most Daeva-like amongst the Daevas

44. 'And he said, the guileful, the evil-doing Daeva, Angra Mainyu the deadly: " What! let the wicked, evil-doing Daevas gather together at the head of Areztira."

45. 'They rush, they run away, the wicked, evil-doing Daevas; they run away with shouts, the wicked, evil-doing Daevas; they run away casting the evil eye, O the wicked, evil-doing Daevas: "Let us gather together at the head of Areztira!

46. "For he is just born the holy Zarathustra, in the house of Pourushaspa. How can we procure his death? He is the stroke that fells the fiends: he is a counter-fiend to the fiends; he is a Drug to the Drug. Down are the Daeva-worshippers, the Nasu made by the Daeva, the false speaking Lie! "

47. 'They run away, they rush away, the wicked, evil-doing Daevas, into the depths of the dark, horrid world of hell. 'Ashem vohu: Holiness is the best of all good.'

FARGARD XX

THRITA THE FIRST HEALER

Thrita was the first who drove back death and disease, as Ahura Mazda had brought to him down from heaven ten thousand healing plants that had been growing up around the tree of eternal life, the white Hom or Gaokerena. This Thrita is mentioned only once again in the Avesta, in Yasna IX, 7 where he appears to have been one of the first priests of Haoma. This accounts for his medical skill; as Haoma is a source of life and health, his first priests must have been the first healers. Thrita was originally the same as Thraetaona. On one hand, we see that in the Rig-veda the great feat of Thraetaona is ascribed to Trita as well as to Traitana, and Trita Aptya, ' the son of the waters,' was as well the celestial priest who pours Haoma into rain as the celestial hero who kills the snake in storms. On the other hand, we see that Thraetaona fulfilled the same functions as Thrita: according to Hamza he was the inventor of medicine; the Tavidis against sickness are inscribed with his name, and we find in the Avesta itself the Fravashi of Thraetaona invoked 'against itch, hot fever, humors, cold fever', vavareshi, against the plagues created by the serpent.' We see from this passage that disease was understood as coming from the serpent; in other words, that it was considered a sort of poisoning, and this is the reason why the killer of the serpent was

invoked to act against it. Thus Thritha-Tbraetaona had a double right to the title of the first of the healers, both as a priest of Haoma and as the conqueror of the serpent

1. Zarathustra asked Ahura Mazda: 'Ahura Mazda, most beneficent Spirit, Maker of the material world, thou Holy One! Who was he who first of the healthful, the wise, the happy, the wealthy, the glorious, the strong men of yore, drove back sickness to sickness, drove back death to death, and first turned away the point of the poniard and the fire of fever from the bodies of mortals.'

2. Ahura Mazda answered: 'Thritha it was who first of the healthful, the wise, the happy, the wealthy, the glorious, the strong man of yore, drove back sickness to sickness, drove back death to death, and first turned away the point of the poniard and the fire of fever from the bodies of mortals.'

3. 'He asked for a source of remedies; he obtained it from Khshathra -Vairya, to withstand sickness and to withstand death, to withstand pain and fever, to withstand the disease, rottenness and infection which Angra Mainyu had created by his witchcraft against the bodies of mortals

4. 'And I Ahura Mazda brought down the healing plants that, by many hundreds, by many thousands, by many myriads, grow up all around the one Gaokerena

5. 'All this (health) do we call by our blessing-spells, by our prayers, by our praises, upon the bodies of mortals

7. 'To thee, O Sickness, I say avaunt! to thee, O Death, I say avaunt! to thee, O Pain, I say avaunt! to thee, O Fever, I say avaunt! to thee, O Disease, I say avaunt!

8. 'By their might may we smite down the Drug! By their might may we smite the Drug! May they give to us strength and power, O Ahura!

9. 'I drive away sickness, I drive away death, I drive away pain and fever, I drive away the disease, rottenness, and infection which Angra Mainyu has created by his witchcraft against the bodies of mortals.

10. 'I drive away all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yatus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis

11. 'May the much-desired Airyaman come here, for the men and women of Zarathustra to rejoice, for the faithful to rejoice; with the desirable reward that is won by means of the law, and with that boon for holiness that is vouchsafed by Ahura!

12. 'May the much-desired Airyaman smite all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yatus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis.'

13. Yatha ahu vairyo: the will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave to him to relieve the poor. Kem na mazda: whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me? Whom but thy Atar and Vohumano, by whose work the holy world goes on? Reveal to me the rules of thy law! Ke verethrem ga: who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances? Teach me clearly thy rules for this world and for the next, that Sraosha may come with Vohu-mano and help whomsoever thou pleasest. Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spenta! Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!

FARGARD XXI

WATERS AND LIGHT

1 (1).Praise of the holy bull.

II (2-3).Invocation addressed to rain as a healing power.

III a (4-7).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the sun.

III b (8-11).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the moon.

III c (12-11).Joint invocation addressed to the waters and to the light of the stars.

IV (18-21).Spells against disease.

I.

1.Hail, holy bull! Hail to thee, beneficent bull! Hail to thee, who makest increase! Hail to thee, who makest growth! Hail to thee, who dost bestow thy gifts upon the excellent faithful, and who wilt bestow them on the faithful yet unborn! Hail to thee, whom the Gahi kills, and the ungodly Ashemaogha, and the wicked tyrant.

II.

2.'Come, come on, O clouds, along the sky, through the air, down on the earth, by thousands of drops, by myriads of drops:' thus say, O holy Zarathustra! 'to destroy sickness altogether, to destroy death altogether, to destroy altogether the sickness made by the Gaini, to destroy altogether the death made by the Gaini, to destroy altogether Gadha and Apagadha

3.'If death come at eve, may healing come at daybreak! 'If death come at daybreak, may healing come at night! 'If death come at night, may healing come at dawn! ' Let showers shower down new waters, new earth, new trees, new health, and new healing powers.

IIIa.

4.'As the sea Vouru-kasha is the gathering place of waters, rise up, go up the aerial way and go down on the earth; go down on the earth and go up the aerial way. Rise up and roll along I thou in whose rising and growing Ahura Mazda made the aerial way

5.'Up! rise up and roll along! thou swift-horsed sun, above Hara Berezaiti, and produce light for the world (and mayst thou [O man!] rise up there, if thou art to abide in Garo-nmanem') along the path made by Mazda, along the way made by the gods, the watery way they opened.

6.'And thou shalt keep away the evil by this holy spell: Of thee [O child!] I will cleanse the birth and growth; of thee [O woman!] will make the body and the strength pure; I make thee a woman rich in children and rich in milk

7.'A woman rich in seed, in milk, in fat, in marrow, and in offspring. I shall make for thee a thousand springs flow and run towards the pastures that will- give food to the child.

IIIb.

8.'As the sea Vouru-kasha is the gathering place of waters) rise up, go up the aerial way, and go down on the earth; go down on the earth and go up the aerial way. Rise up and roll along! thou in whose rising and growing Ahura Mazda made the earth

9.'Up! rise up, thou moon, that dost keep in thee the seed of the bull', rise up above Hara Berezaiti, and produce light for the world {and mayst thou [O man!] rise up there, if thou art to abide in Garo-nmanem), along the path made by Mazda, along the way made by the gods, the watery way they opened.

10.'And thou shalt keep away the evil by this holy spell: Of thee [O child!] I will cleanse the birth and growth; of thee [O woman!] I will make the body and the strength pure; I make thee a woman rich in children and rich in milk

11.'A woman rich in seed, in milk, in fat, in marrow, and in offspring. I shall make for thee a thousand springs flow and run towards the pastures that will give food to the child.

IIIc.

12.'As the sea Vouru-kasha is the gathering place of waters, rise up, go up the aerial way, and go down on the earth; go down on the earth and go up the aerial way. Rise up and roll along! thou in whose rising and growing Ahura Mazda made everything grow

13.'Up! rise up, ye stars, that have in you the, seed of waters, rise up above Hara Berezaiti, and produce light for the world (and mayst thou [O man!] rise up there, if thou art to abide in Garo- nmanem), along the path made by Mazda, along the way made by the gods, the watery way they opened.

14.'And thou shalt keep away the evil by this holy spell: Of thee [O child!] I will cleanse the birth and growth; of thee [O woman!] I will make the body and the strength pure; I make thee a woman rich in children and rich in milk;

15.'A woman rich in seed, in milk, in fat, in marrow, and in offspring. I shall make for thee a thousand springs flow and run towards the pastures that will give food to the child.

16.'As the sea Vouru-kasha is the gathering place of waters, rise up and gather together, go up the aerial way and go down on the earth; go down on the earth and go up the aerial way. Rise up and roll along!

17.'Up! rise up! away will the Kahvuzi fly and cry, away will Ayehi fly and cry, away will the Gahi, who is addicted to the Yatu, fly and cry.

IV.

18.'I drive away I shire, I drive away Aghuire, I drive away Aghra, I drive away Ughra; I drive away sickness, I drive away death, I drive away pain and fever; I drive away Sarana, I drive away Sarasti, I drive away Azana, I drive away Azahva, I drive away Kurugha, I drive away Azivaka, I drive away Duruka, I drive away

Astairya; I drive away the disease, rottenness, and infection which Angra Mainyu has created by his witchcraft against the bodies of mortals.

19. 'I drive away all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yatus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis.

20. 'May the much-desired Airyaman come here, for the men and women of Zarathustra to rejoice, for the faithful to rejoice; with the desirable reward that is won by means of the law, and with that boon for holiness that is vouchsafed by Ahura!

21. 'May the much-desired Airyaman smite all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yitus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis

22. 'Yatha ahu vairyo: the will of the Lord ' Kem na mazda: whom hast thou placed to protect me? 'Ke verethrem ga: who is he who will smite the fiend?

23. 'Keep us from our hater, O Maroa and Armaiti Spentat Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend I Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Perish, away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!'

FARGARD XXII

Angra Mainyu creates 99,999 diseases: Ahura Mazda applies for healing to the holy word and to Airyaman. Airyaman is an old Indo-Iranian god: in the Rig-veda he is an Aditya (Aryaman), who is seldom invoked alone, but nearly always in company with Mitra and Varona. His name, like Mitra's, means, 'the friend,' and, like Mitra, he is the god of heavenly light, kind, beneficent, and helpful to man. In the Avesta the word Airyaman has the same meaning as in the Veda; but the character of the god is more fully developed, and whereas he has no distinct personality in the Vedic hymns, he appears here in the character of a healing god, which is derived in a very natural manner from his primitive and general character. Airyaman abides in a mansion called the mansion of Airyaman (Airyamna nmanem), which is the same as 'the bright mansion in which Mitra, Aryaman, Varuna abide,' according to the Vedas. that is to say, the sky. In later Parsism, Airyaman appears as 'the Ized of Heaven.' This Fargard is unfinished or, more correctly, the end of it is understood. Airyilman, called out from his mansion, comes and digs nine furrows. It is no doubt in order to perform the Barashnum I or some ceremony of that kind, in order to cleanse the unclean, that is to say, the sick man, and to restore him to health by virtue of the Nirang and of the holy word. The Fargard ends therefore with spells against sickness and against death.

I.

1. Ahura Mazda spake unto Spitama Zarathustra, saying: 'I, Ahura Mazda, the Maker of all good things, when I, made this mansion', the beautiful, the shining, seen afar (there may I go up, there may I pass!)

2. 'Then the ruffian looked at me; the ruffian Angra Mainyu, the deadly, wrought by his witchcraft nine diseases, and ninety, and nine hundred, and nine thousand, and nine times ten thousand diseases. So mayst thou heal me, O Mathra Spenta, thou most glorious one!

3.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, swift-running steeds; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. 'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, high-humped camels; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

4.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand brown oxen that do not push; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. ' Unto thee will I give in return a thousand young of all species of small cattle; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good: Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

5.'And I will bless thee with the fair, holy blessing-spell, the friendly, holy blessing-spell, that makes the empty swell to fulness and the full to overflowing, that comes to help him who was sickening, and makes the sick man sound again.

6. 'Mathra Spenta, the all-glorious, replied unto me: "How shall I heal thee? How shall I drive away from thee those nine diseases, and those ninety, those nine hundred, those nine, thousand, and those nine times ten thousand diseases? "

II.

7.The Maker Ahura Mazda called for Nairyō-sangha: Go thou, Nairyō-sangha, the herald, and drive towards the mansion of Airyaman, and speak thus unto him

8.Thus speaks Ahura Mazda, the Holy One, unto thee: 'I, Ahura 'Mazda, the Maker of all good things, when I made this mansion, the beautiful, the shining, seen afar (there may I go up, there may I pass!)

9.'Then the ruffian looked at me; the ruffian Angra Mainyu, the deadly, wrought by his witchcraft nine diseases, and ninety, and nine hundred, and nine thousand, and nine times ten thousand diseases. So mayst thou heal me, O Airyaman, the much-desired!

10.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, swift-running steeds; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. ' Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, high-humped camels; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

11.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand brown oxen that do not push; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. 'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand young of all species of small cattle; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

12.'And I will bless thee with the fair, holy blessing-spell, the friendly, holy blessing-spell, that makes the empty swell to fulness and the full to overflowing, that comes to help him who was sickening, and makes the sick man sound again.'

III.

13.In obedience to Ahura's words he went, Nairyō-sangha, the herald; he drove towards the mansion of Airyaman, he spake unto Airyaman, saymg:

14.Thus speaks Ahura Mazda, the Holy One, unto thee: 'I, Ahura Mazda, the Maker of all good things, when I made this mansion, the beautiful, the shining, seen afar (there may I go up, there may I pass!)

15.'Then the ruffian looked at me; the ruffian Angra Mainyu, the deadly, wrought by his witchcraft nine diseases, and ninety, and nine hundred, and nine thousand, and nine times ten thousand diseases. So mayst thou heal me, O Airyaman, the much desired!

16.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, swift-running steeds; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. ' Unto thee will I give in return a thousand fleet, high-humped camels; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

17.'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand brown oxen that do not push; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy. 'Unto thee will I give in return a thousand young of all species of small cattle; offer them up as a sacrifice unto the good Saoka, made by Mazda and holy.

18.'And I will bless thee with the fair, holy blessing-spell, the friendly, holy blessing-spell, that makes the empty swell to fulness and the full to overflowing, that comes to help him who was sickening, and makes the sick man sound again.'

IV.

19.Quickly was it done, nor was it long, eagerly set off the much-desired Airyaman, towards the mountain of the holy questions, towards the forest of the holy questions.

20.Nine stallions brought he with him, the much-desired Airyaman. Nine camels brought he with him, the much desired Airyaman. Nine bulls brought he with him, the much desired Airyaman. Nine head of small cattle brought he with him, the much-desired Airyaman. He brought with him the nine twigs; he drew along nine furrows

21. 'I drive away I shire, I drive away Aghuire I drive away Aghra, I drive away Ughra; I drive away sickness, I drive away death, I drive away pain and fever; I drive away Sarana, I drive away Sirastya, I drive away Aeana, I, drive, away Azahva, I drive away Kurugha, I drive away Azivika, I drive away Duruka, I drive away Astairya; I drive away the disease, rottenness, and infection which Angra Mainyu, has created by ,his witchcraft against the bodies of mortals.

22.'I drive away all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yitus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis.

23.'May the much-desired Airyaman come here for the men and women of Zarathustra to rejoice, for the faithful to rejoice; with the desirable reward that is won by means of the law, and with that boon for holiness that is vouchsafed by Ahura.

24.'May the much-desired Airyaman smite all manner of diseases and deaths, all the Yitus and Pairikas, and all the wicked Gainis.

25.'Yathi ahu vairyo: the will of the Lord is the law of holiness; the riches of Vohu-mano shall be given to him who works in this world for Mazda, and wields according to the will of Ahura the power he gave him to relieve the poor. 'Kem ni mazda: whom hast thou placed to protect me, O Mazda! while the hate of the fiend is grasping me? Whom but thy Atar and Vohu-mano, by whose work the holy world goes on? Reveal to me the rules of thy law! 'Ke verethrem ga: who is he who will smite the fiend in order to maintain thy ordinances? Teach me clearly thy rules for this world and for the next, that Sraosha may come with Vohu-

mano and help whomsoever thou pleasest. 'Keep us from our hater, O Mazda and Armaiti Spentat Perish, O fiendish Drug! Perish, O brood of the fiend! Perish, O world of the fiend! Perish away, O Drug! Perish away to the regions of the north, never more to give unto death the living world of the holy spirit!'